

California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING: This product contains or emits chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR).

The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. **The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling.**

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

The data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential.

California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act

The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle may contain perchlorate materials - special handling may apply. See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a **NOTICE** symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.


A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgment.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

This owner's manual is for vehicles sold in the United States and Canada.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

➤ Safe Driving P. 31

For Safe Driving P. 32

Seat Belts P. 36

Airbags P. 43

➤ Instrument Panel P. 69

Indicators P. 70

Gauges and Multi-Information Display P. 89

➤ Controls P. 107

Clock P. 108

Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 109

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 126

Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 146

➤ Features P. 159

Audio System P. 160

Audio System Basic Operation P. 166

Customized Features P. 202

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® P. 213

➤ Driving P. 243

Before Driving P. 244

Towing a Trailer P. 250

Multi-View Rear Camera P. 291

➤ Maintenance P. 299

Before Performing Maintenance P. 300

Maintenance Minder™ P. 303

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 328

Climate Control System Maintenance P. 343

➤ Handling the Unexpected P. 349

Tools P. 350

If a Tire Goes Flat P. 351

Overheating P. 370

Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 372

➤ Information P. 387

Specifications P. 388

Identification Numbers P. 390

Emissions Testing P. 393

Warranty Coverages P. 395

Contents

Child Safety P. 58

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 66

Safety Labels P. 67

Opening and Closing the Hatch P. 119
Adjusting the Mirrors P. 139
Climate Control System P. 155

Security System P. 122
Adjusting the Seats P. 141

Opening and Closing the Windows P. 124

Audio Error Messages P. 195

General Information on the Audio System P. 199

When Driving P. 251
Refueling P. 293

Braking P. 284
Fuel Economy P. 296

Parking Your Vehicle P. 290
Accessories and Modifications P. 297

Maintenance Under the Hood P. 307
Checking and Maintaining Tires P. 331
Cleaning P. 344

Replacing Light Bulbs P. 320
12-Volt Battery P. 340

Remote Transmitter Care P. 342

Engine Does Not Start P. 362
Fuses P. 378

Jump Starting P. 366
Emergency Towing P. 383

Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 369
When You Cannot Open the Hatch P. 385

Devices that Emit Radio Waves P. 391
Authorized Manuals P. 397

Reporting Safety Defects P. 392
Customer Service Information P. 398

Quick Reference Guide P. 4

Safe Driving P. 31

Instrument Panel P. 69

Controls P. 107

Features P. 159

Driving P. 243

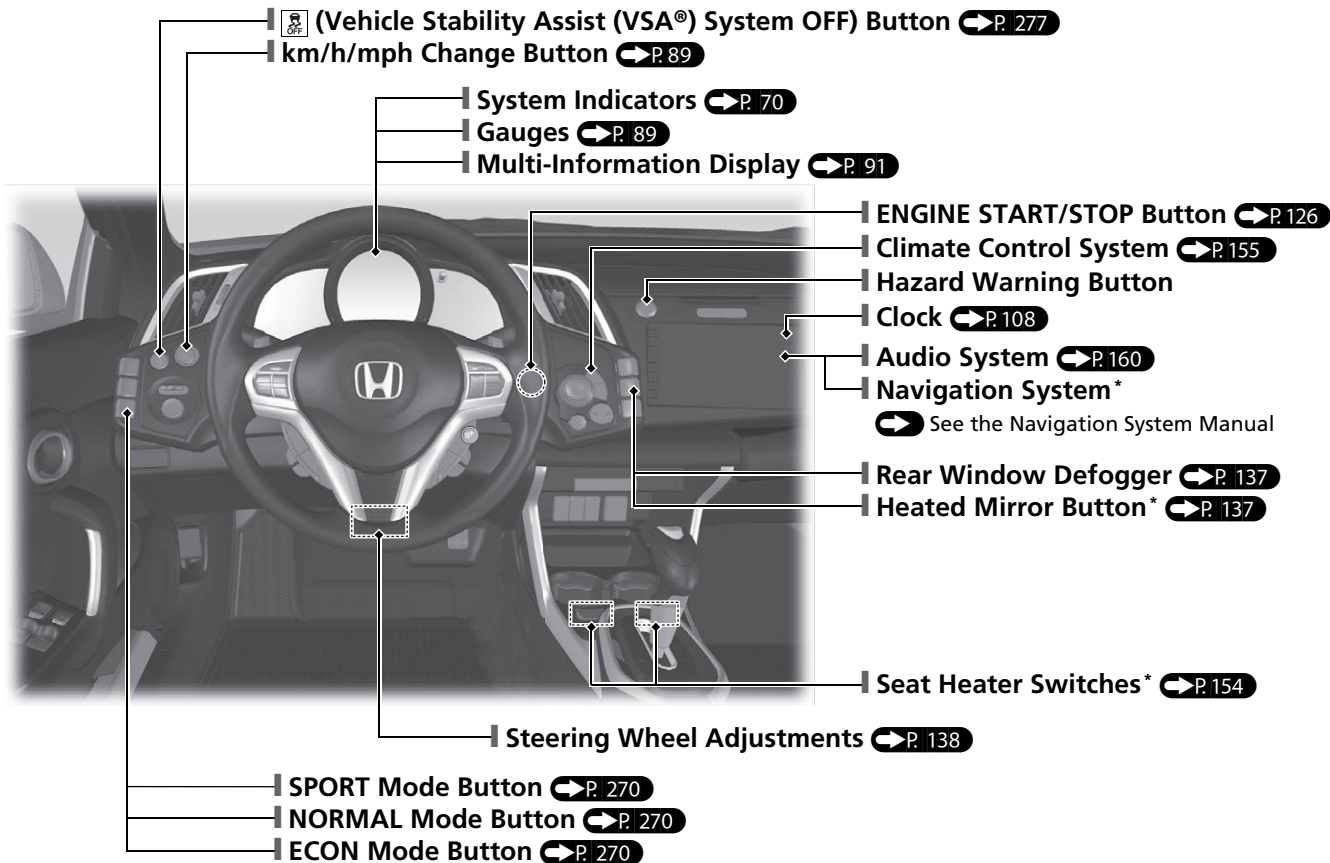
Maintenance P. 299

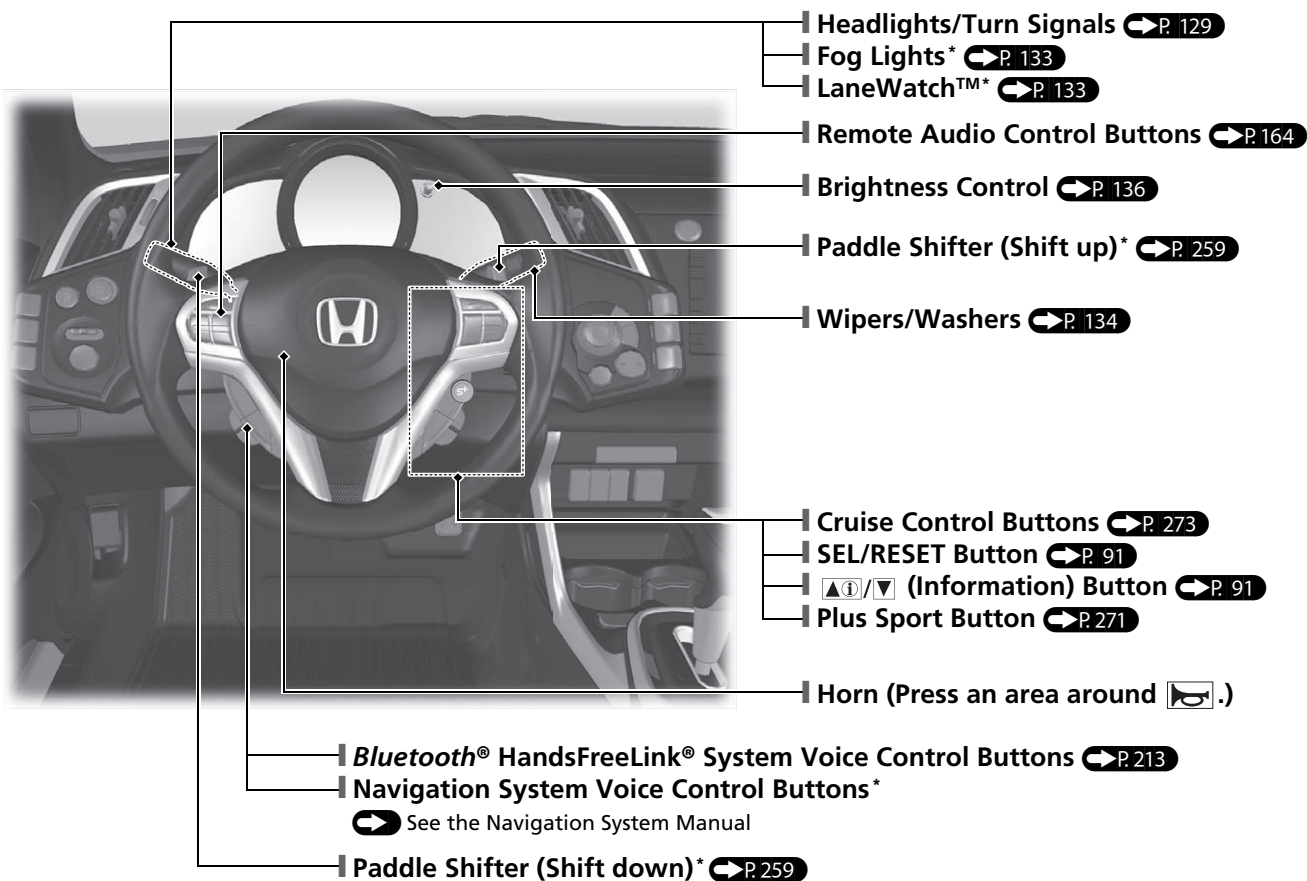
Handling the Unexpected P. 349

Information P. 387

Index P. 399

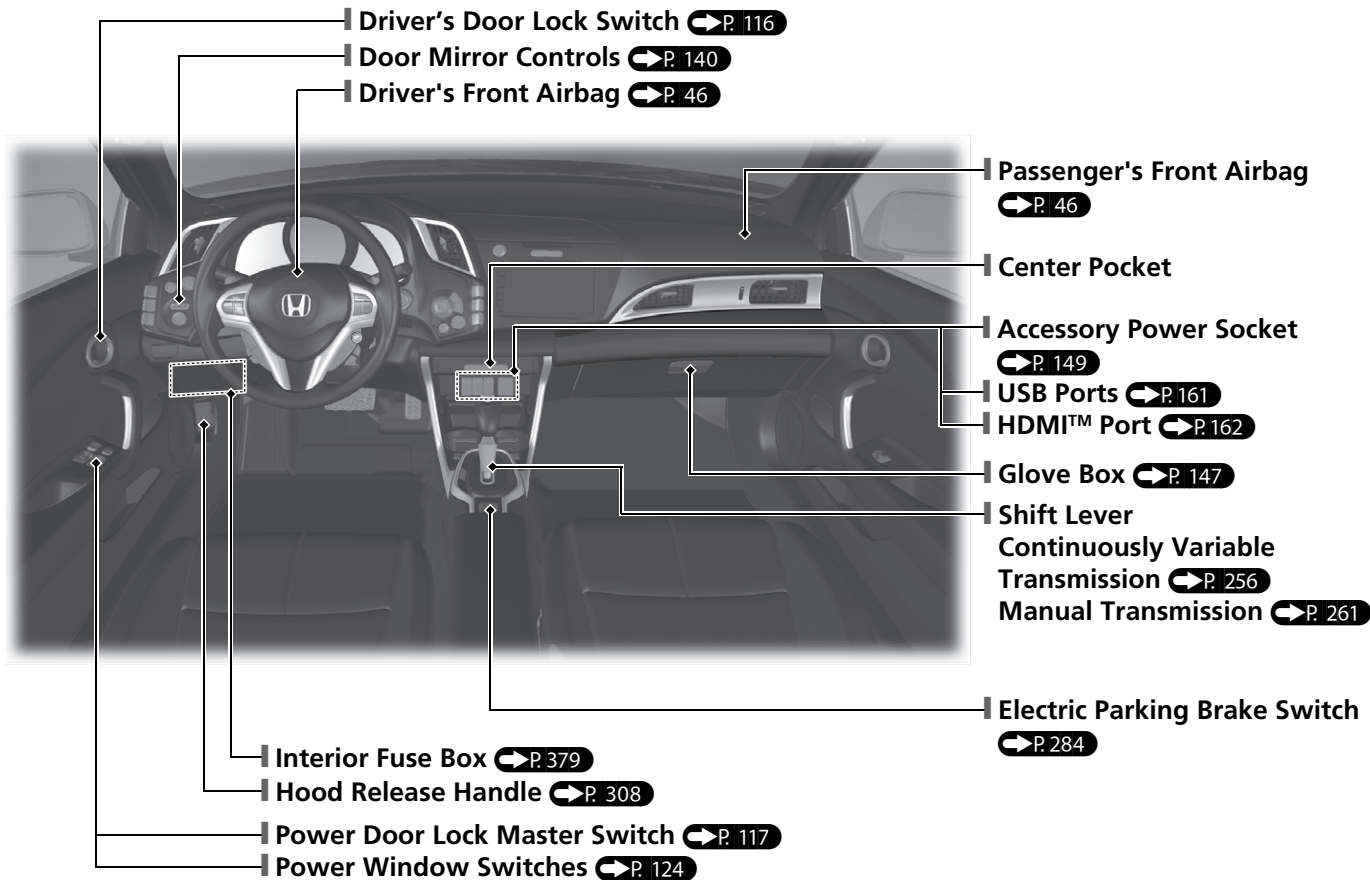
Visual Index

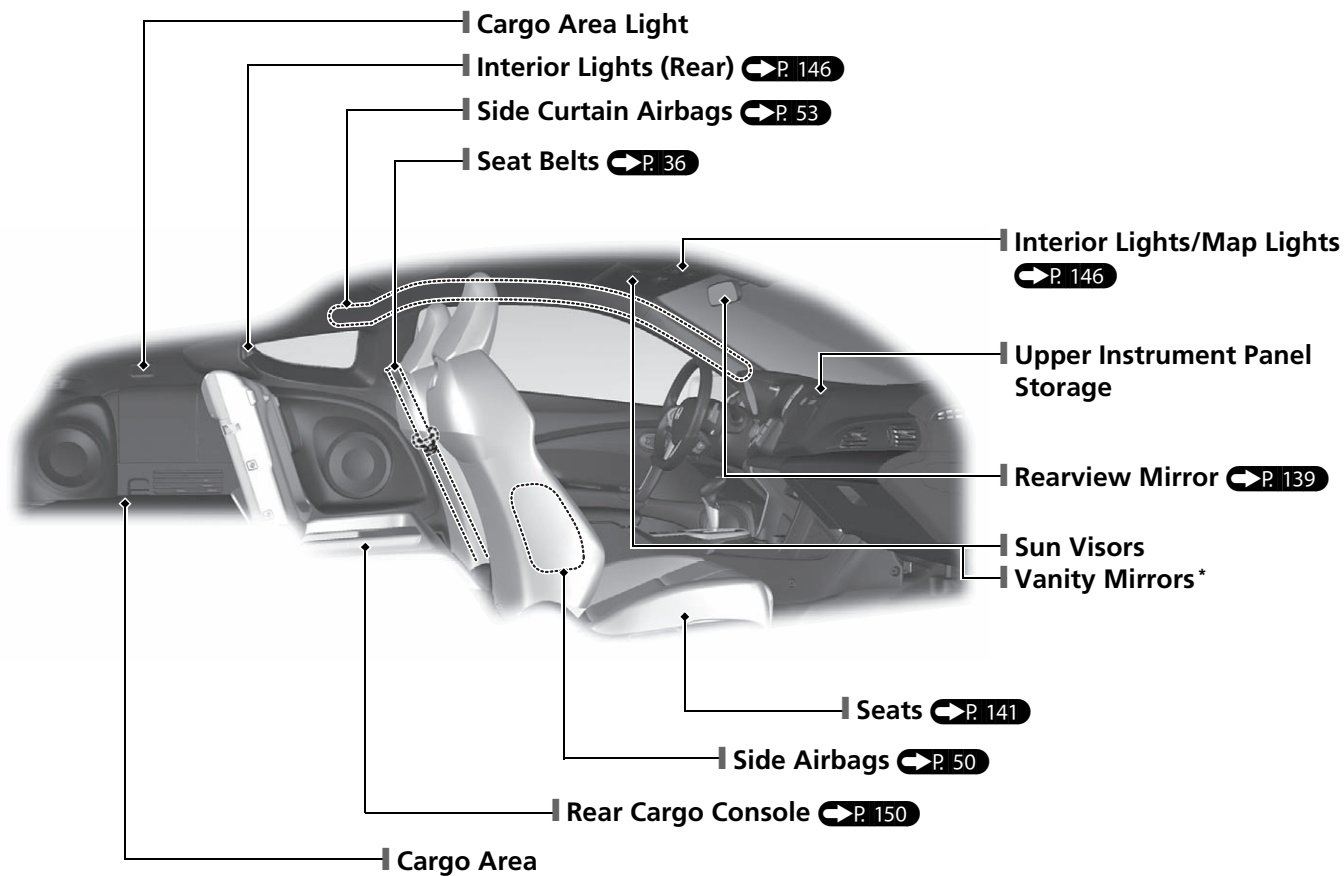




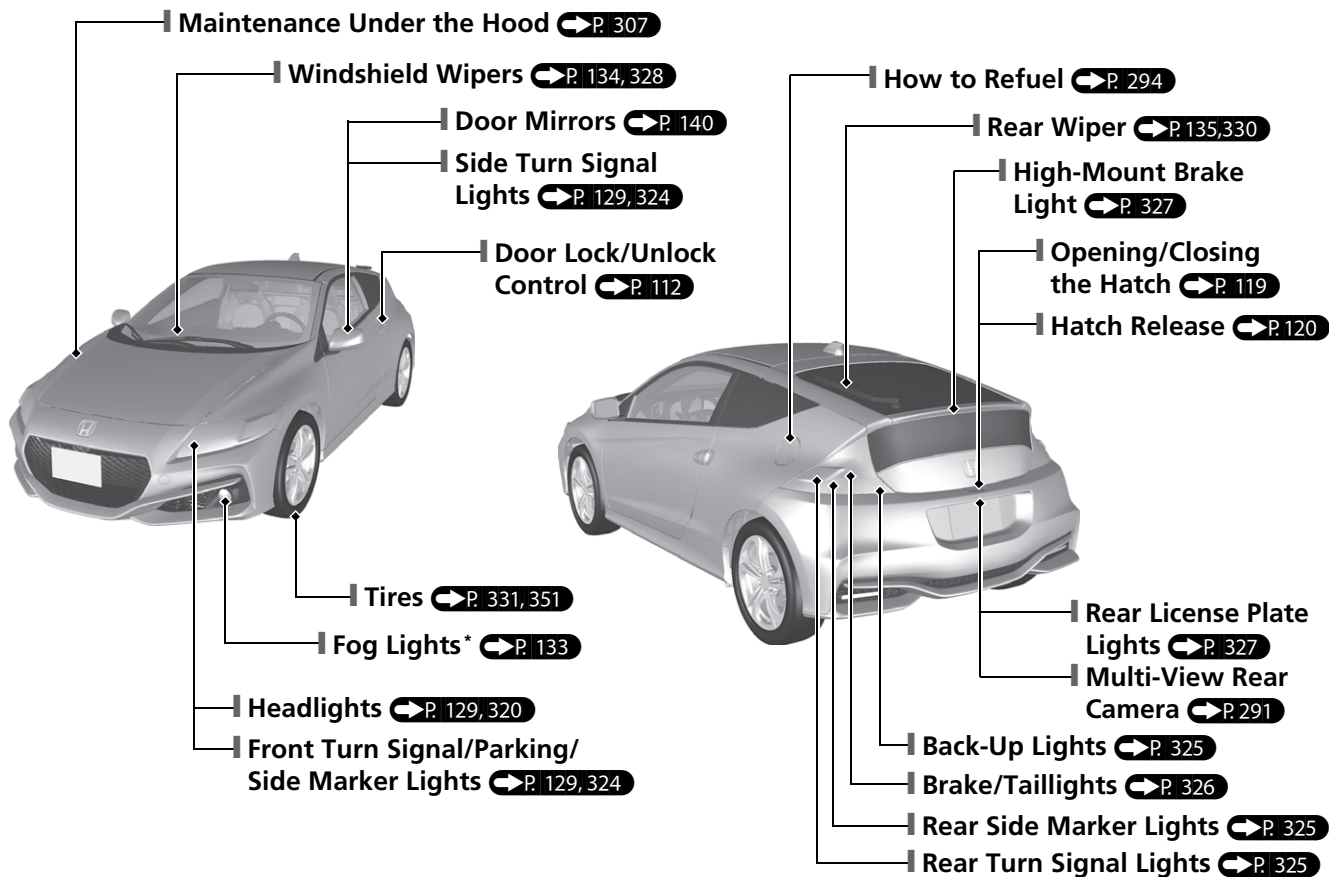
* Not available on all models

Visual Index





Visual Index



3-Mode Drive System

There are three driving modes for your vehicle: SPORT, NORMAL and ECON. Each mode offers a different level of driving performance. The mode buttons are located on the control panel. NORMAL mode, which is most suitable for all-purpose driving, is the default setting for your vehicle.

SPORT Mode

Increases engine performance and handling. Best suited for driving in hilly regions and on open, curvy roads.

NORMAL Mode

Balances driving performance and fuel economy. Best for most driving situations.

ECON Mode

Maximizes fuel economy. Provides longer Auto Idle Stop operating time when the climate control system is in use.

SPORT
NORMAL



The indicator of the selected mode comes on.

Plus Sport System

Helps the vehicle to momentarily accelerate with more engine and electric motor assist power when you depress the accelerator pedal.

st

The indicator blinks when the Plus Sport System stands by to be activated, and when the system is in operation.

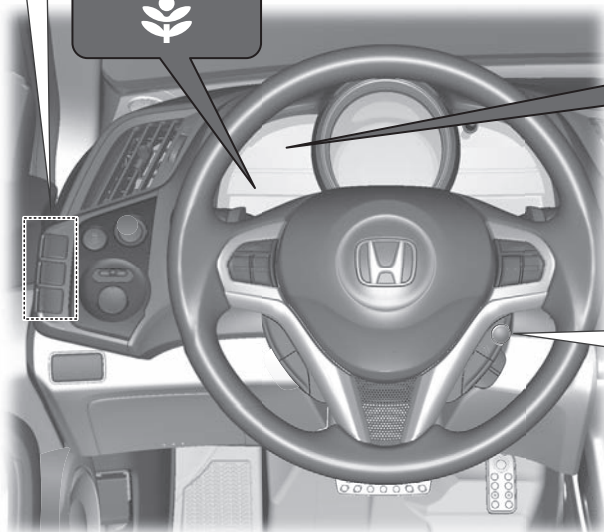
Plus Sport Button



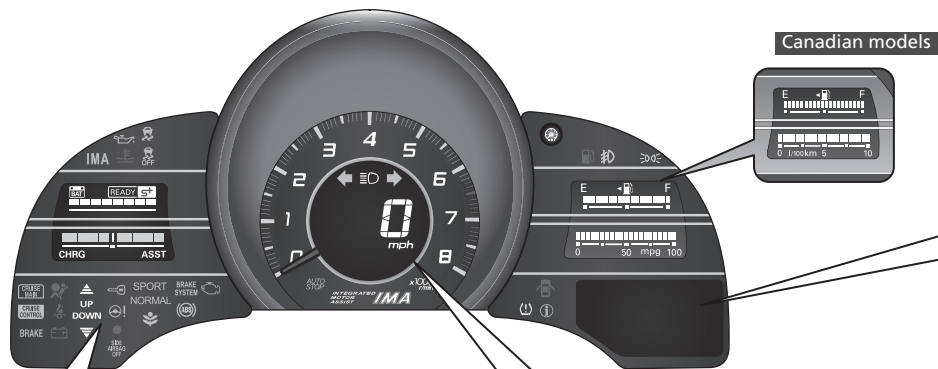
Press the **st** button, then depress the accelerator pedal to activate the Plus Sport System in any driving mode (SPORT, NORMAL, or ECON).

This helps you to momentarily accelerate with more power when you depress the accelerator pedal.

Plus Sport System P. 271



Eco Assist System



The Shift UP/DOWN Indicators*

➔ P.262

- These indicators alert you when it is appropriate to shift to attain better fuel economy.



Displays when shifting up is recommended.

UP

DOWN



Displays when shifting down is recommended.

The indicators do not come on in SPORT mode.

Ambient Meter

- Changes color to reflect your driving style.
 - Green: Fuel efficient driving
 - Blue green: Moderate acceleration/deceleration
 - Blue: Aggressive acceleration/deceleration
- Changes to constant red when SPORT mode is selected.
- The ambient meter color changes in accordance with:

Continuously variable transmission models

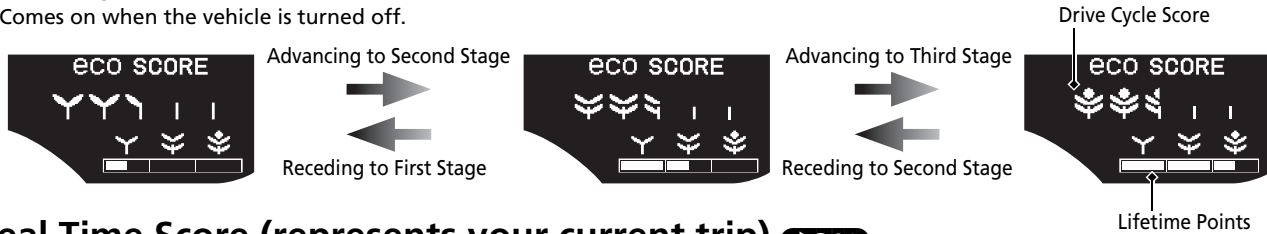
Your brake or accelerator pedal operation.

Manual transmission models

Your brake or accelerator pedal operation, and shift changes based on the shift up indicator.

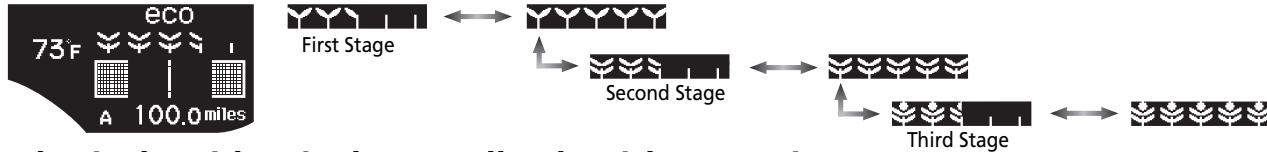
Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points

- Comes on when the vehicle is turned off.



Real Time Score (represents your current trip) [P 94](#)

- Each time you set the power mode to ON, the Ecological Drive display starts without any leaves on the plants. Leaves accumulate or diminish based on your driving style during the current trip.



Ecological Guide Display Feedback with Eco Drive Bar [P 95](#)

- Keep the bar from extending too much to the left or right side. The shorter the bar is while driving, the higher the fuel economy becomes.

The bar extends to the right when you press the accelerator pedal.

Slow, steady acceleration/
Maximizes fuel economy



Moderate acceleration



Aggressive/Inconsistent acceleration



The bar extends to the left when you press the brake pedal.



Slow deceleration/
Maximizes fuel economy



Moderate deceleration



Aggressive deceleration

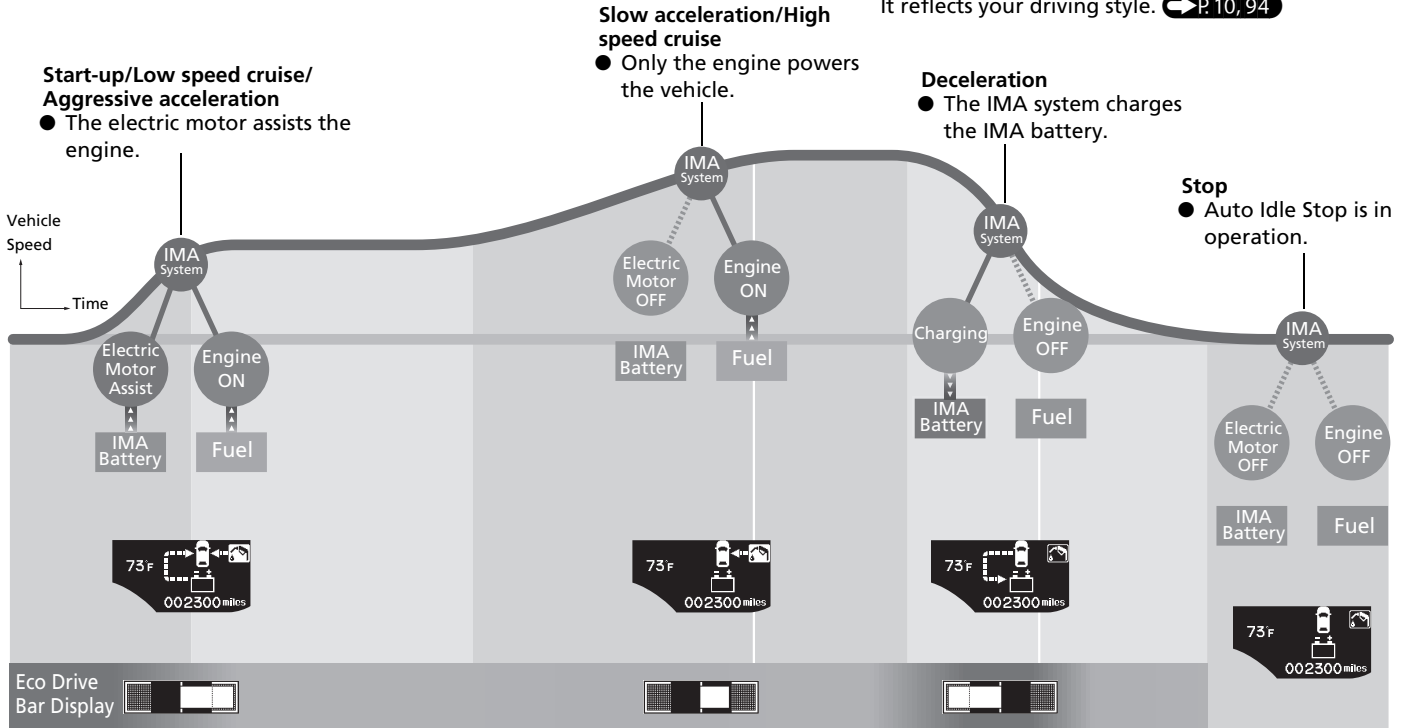
The Honda IMA System

The main power source for the Honda IMA system is the gasoline engine. The electric motor assists the engine to improve fuel economy, based on current operating conditions.

Tips to Improve Fuel Economy

To help your vehicle's fuel economy:

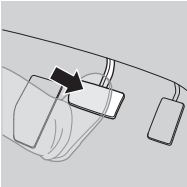
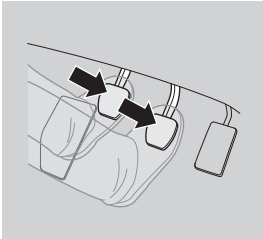

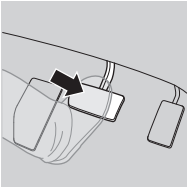
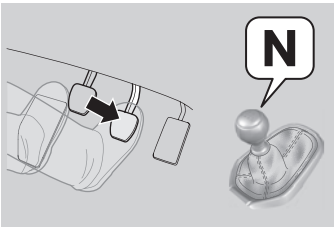

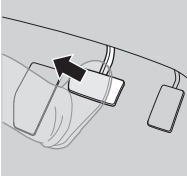
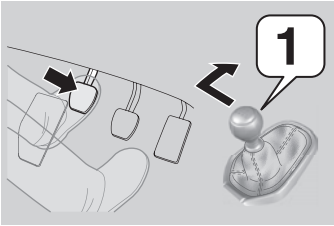
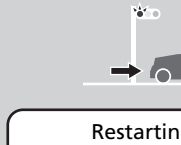
- Avoid aggressive acceleration/braking
- Monitor the ambient meter and the Eco drive bar displayed on the multi-information display. It reflects your driving style. **▶ P. 10, 94**



Auto Idle Stop Function

To improve fuel economy, the engine stops and then restarts as detailed below. When Auto Idle Stop is on, the **AUTO STOP** indicator blinks.

➔ P. 264, 267

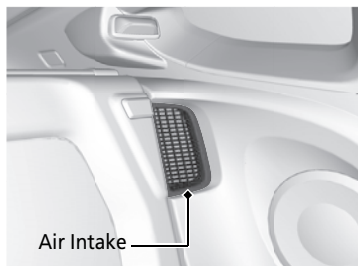
At	Continuously variable transmission	Manual transmission	Engine status
<p>Deceleration</p>	<p>Depress the brake pedal. The vehicle speed goes below 6 mph (10 km/h).</p> 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Depress the brake pedal. The vehicle speed goes below 19 mph (30 km/h). 2. Fully depress the clutch pedal. 	 <p>Turning off</p>
<p>Stop</p>	<p>Continue to depress the brake pedal.</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continue to depress the brake pedal. • Move the shift lever to N. • Release the clutch pedal. 	 <p>Off</p>
<p>Start-up</p>	<p>Release the brake pedal.</p> 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Fully depress the clutch pedal again. 2. Move the shift lever to 1. 3. Depress the accelerator pedal to resume driving. 	 <p>Restarting</p>

To Keep the IMA Battery in Good Condition


Drive your vehicle at least once a month, and drive for more than 30 minutes at a time. Parking your vehicle for an extended period can cause the IMA battery to weaken or decrease the IMA battery life.


Safety Precautions

Do not cover the air intake.



If the air intake is obstructed during vehicle operation, the IMA battery can become too hot. To protect the battery, the system may start limiting IMA battery output power and cause the IMA system and 12-volt battery charging system indicators to come on.

IMA System Indicator  P.94

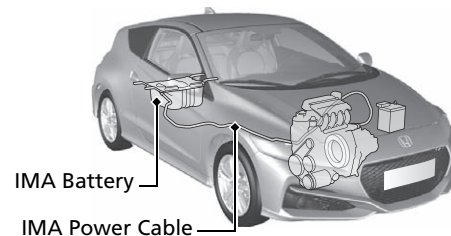
12-volt Battery Charging System Indicator  P.72

Do not touch the Honda IMA System

A high voltage current runs through the Honda IMA System. Consult your authorized dealer when maintenance or repair is needed.

Do not spill any liquids on or around the IMA battery, as they can damage the IMA battery. If you accidentally spill liquids on or around the battery, ensure that the spill is completely wiped up as soon as possible.

The IMA system indicator may come on.



If a crash occurs

- Be careful of electric shock hazard.
 - ▶ If a crash severely damaged your vehicle, there is a possibility of electrical shock. Do not touch the IMA system components or its wiring (orange).
- Avoid contact with IMA battery fluid.
 - ▶ The battery fluid may leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid any skin or eye contact with the fluid. The battery fluid is corrosive. If you accidentally touch it, flush the affected area(s) with a large quantity of water for at least five minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.
- Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.
 - ▶ Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with a small quantity of water can be dangerous.

When the vehicle is disposed

- The IMA battery is a Lithium-ion battery. Honda collects and recycles used IMA batteries – consult your dealer for proper battery disposal in the event your vehicle is not repairable.

Safe Driving P. 31

Airbags P. 43

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help protect you and your passenger during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Child Safety P. 58

- **Your vehicle is not recommended for child passengers.** If you decide to disregard our recommendations and transport a child passenger, the child should be properly restrained. Never put a rear-facing child seat in the passenger's seat.

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 66

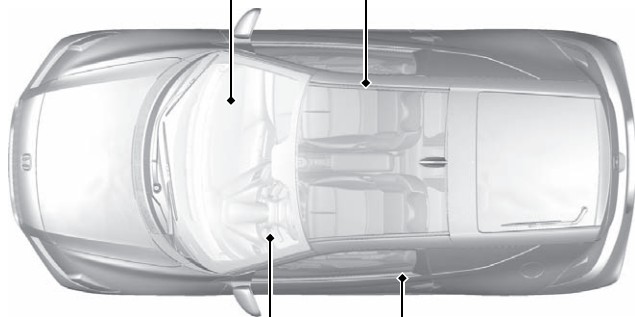
- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Seat Belts P. 36

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passenger is wearing their seat belt correctly.

Before Driving Checklist P. 244

- Before driving, check that the seats, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.






Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.












Instrument Panel ↔ P.69

Gauges ↔ P.89 / Multi-Information Display ↔ P.91 / System Indicators ↔ P.70

Lights Indicators

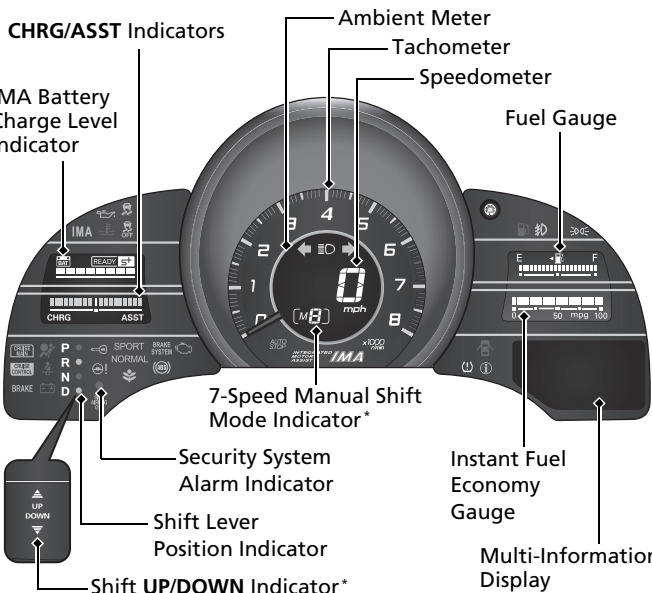
-  Lights On Indicator
-  High Beam Indicator
-  Fog Light Indicator*

System Indicators





-  Malfunction Indicator Lamp
-  Low Oil Pressure Indicator
-  12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator
-  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
-  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System Indicator
-  VSA® OFF Indicator
-  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
-  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
-  Immobilizer System Indicator
-  **IMA** IMA System Indicator
-  **AUTO STOP** Auto Idle Stop Indicator

CHRG/ASST Indicators




IMA Battery Charge Level Indicator
















System Indicators

-  High Temperature Indicator (Red)
-  Low Temperature Indicator (Blue)
-  Low Fuel Indicator
-  Seat Belt Reminder Indicator

System Indicators

-  SPORT **SPORT** Mode Indicator
-  NORMAL **NORMAL** Mode Indicator
-  **ECON** Mode Indicator

System Indicators

-  **BRAKE** **U.S.** **Canada** Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
-  **BRAKE SYSTEM** **U.S.** **Canada** Brake System Indicator (Amber)
-  Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
-  **SIDE AIRBAG OFF** **U.S.** **Canada** Side Airbag Off Indicator
-  **U.S. models only**
-  Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator
-  Door/Hatch Open Indicator
-  **CRUISE MAIN** Indicator
-  **CRUISE CONTROL** Indicator
-  System Message Indicator
-  **READY** **ST** Plus Sport System Indicator
-  **READY** Plus Sport **READY** Indicator
-  **ST** Plus Sport Indicator

Controls P.107

Clock P.108




Models with navigation system

The navigation system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically.

Models without navigation system

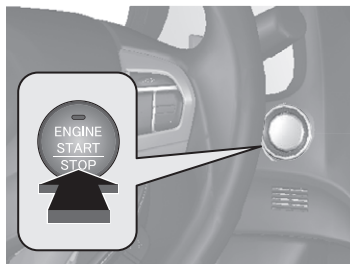
 (Home) Button



- 1 Press the  (Home) button, then select **Settings**.
- 2 Select **Clock/Info**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
- 3 Touch the / icon to adjust the numbers up or down.
- 4 Select **OK**.

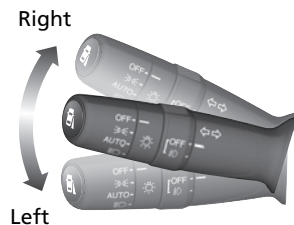
ENGINE START/STOP Button P.126

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



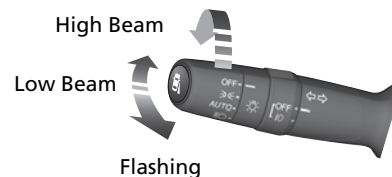
Turn Signals P.129

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights P.129

Light Control Switches



Wipers and Washers

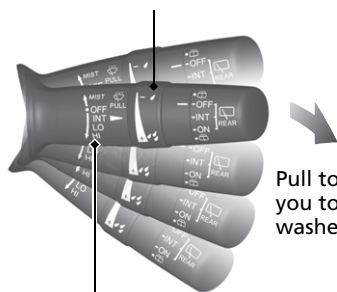
➔ P.134

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

Adjustment Ring

☂: Lower speed, fewer sweeps

☂☂: Higher speed, more sweeps



Pull toward you to spray washer fluid.

MIST
OFF

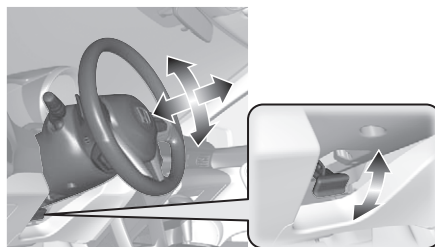
INT: Low speed with intermittent

LO: Low speed wipe

HI: High speed wipe

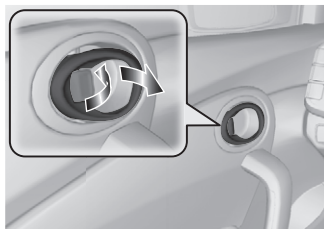
Steering Wheel ➔ P.138

- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever toward you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.

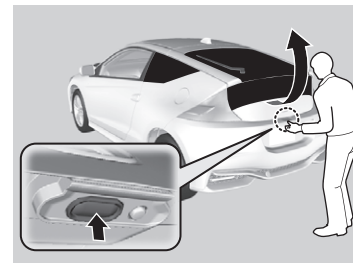


Unlocking the Doors from the Inside ➔ P.116

- Pull either door inner handle to unlock and open it in one motion.



Hatch ➔ P.119

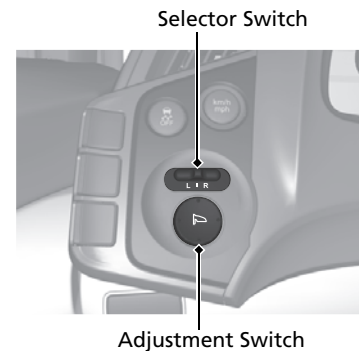


- To open the hatch, push the hatch release button, and lift up.

Power Door Mirrors

➔ P.140

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.



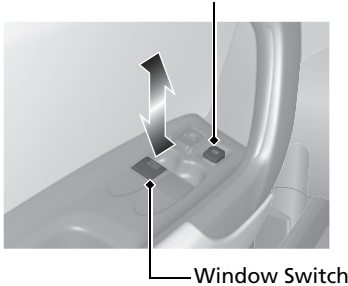
Selector Switch

Adjustment Switch




Power Windows P.124

- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, the passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position, the passenger's window is disabled.

Power Window Lock Button

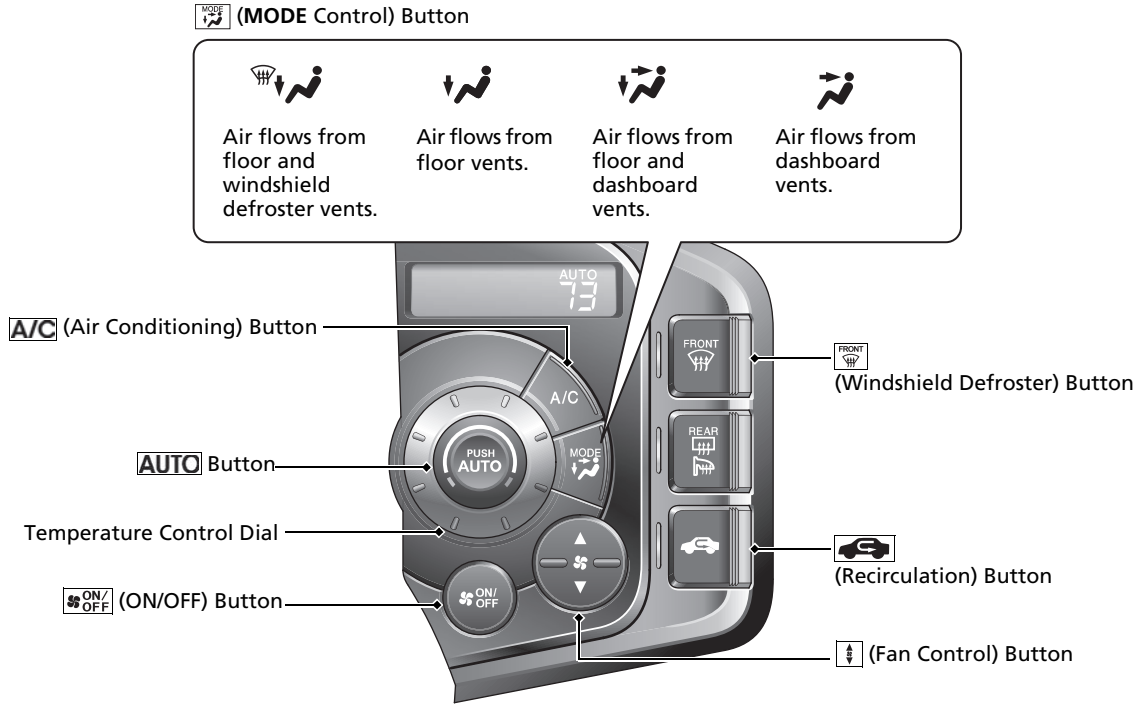


Climate Control System P.155

- Press the  button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the  button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the  button to defrost the windshield.

Models with navigation system

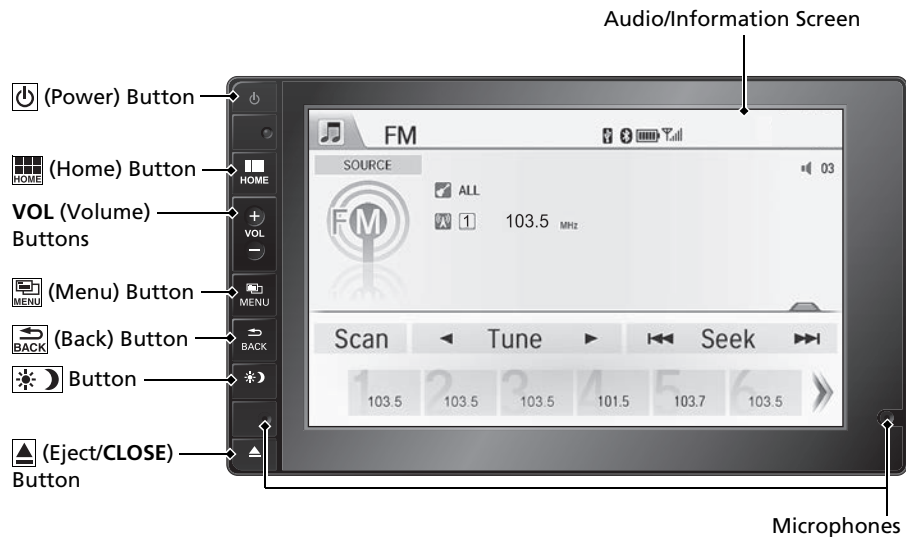
The climate control system is voice operable. See the Navigation System Manual for complete details.





Features P.159

Audio System P.160


For navigation system operation  See the Navigation System Manual



- Press the  (Eject/CLOSE) button to open the screen.

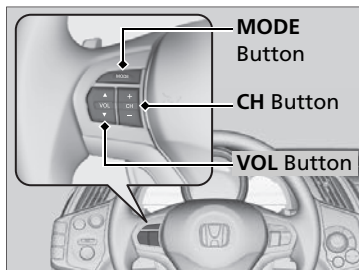
 (Eject/CLOSE) Button CD Slot



- Press the  (Eject/CLOSE) button to return the screen to the upright position.

Audio Remote Controls

➔ P.164



- **VOL** (volume) Button

Press ▲ / ▼ to adjust the volume up/down.

- **MODE** Button

Press to change the audio mode: FM/AM/CD/USB/iPod/Pandora[®]*1/Apps/Bluetooth[®] Audio/AUX HDMI[™].

- **CH** (channel) Button

Radio: Press to change the preset station.

Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.

CD/USB/Bluetooth[®] Audio device:

Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.

Press and hold to change a folder.

Pandora[®]*1:

Press to skip to the next song. Press and hold to change the station.

*1: U.S. models only

Driving [P.243](#)

Manual Transmission [P.261](#)

Continuously Variable Transmission [P.256](#)

- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.
- Shifting

Park

Turn off or start the engine. Transmission is locked.

P

Reverse

Used when reversing.

R

Neutral

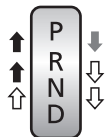
Transmission is not locked.

N

Drive

Normal driving. 7-speed manual shift mode can be used. L mode is available.

D



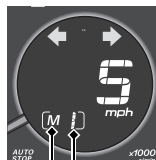
Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of **P**.

Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.

Press the release button to move the shift lever.

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode [P.258](#)

- Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

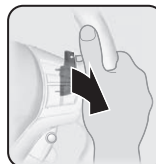


Shift Indicator

M Indicator

Shift Down **-** Paddle Shifter

Shift Up **+** Paddle Shifter



SPORT Mode

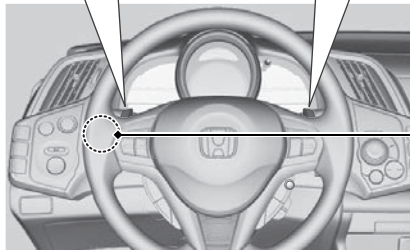
- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

NORMAL Mode/ECON Mode

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.


L (Low) Mode [P.260](#)

- Use Low to get more power when climbing steep hills.
- Pull the **+** and **-** paddle shifters at the same time until the shift indicator display changes to L.



ENGINE START/STOP button

VSA® OFF Button P.277

- The vehicle stability assist (VSA®) system helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering, and helps maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA® comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To turn VSA® on or off, press and hold the  button until you hear a beep.

Cruise Control P.273

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the **CRUISE** button, then press **DECEL/SET** once you have achieved the desired speed above 25 mph or 40 km/h.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P.280

U.S. models only

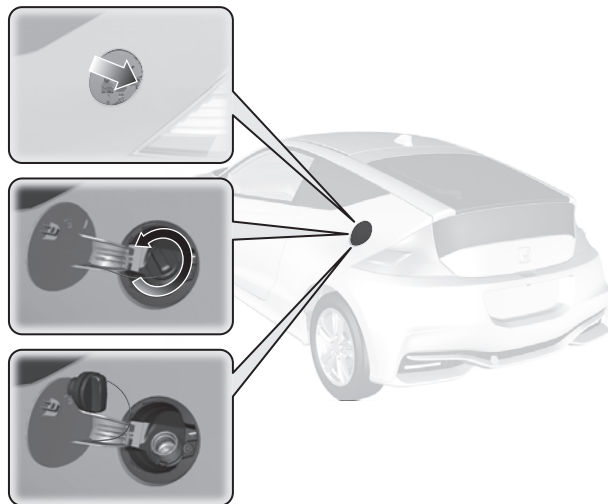
- TPMS monitors tire pressure.
- TPMS is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.

Refueling P.293

Fuel recommendation: Unleaded gasoline with a pump octane number 87 or higher required

Fuel tank capacity: 10.6 US gal (40 L)

- 1** Press and release the center of the rear edge of the fuel fill door. You hear a click. The door pops open slightly.
- 2** Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
- 3** Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
- 4** After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



Maintenance ➔ P. 299

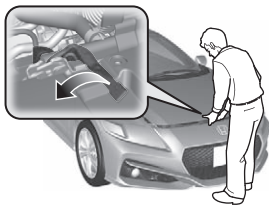
Under the Hood ➔ P. 307

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and window washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check transmission fluid (Continuously Variable Transmission).
- Check brake fluid and clutch fluid*.
- Check the 12-Volt Battery condition monthly.

- 1** Pull the hood release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



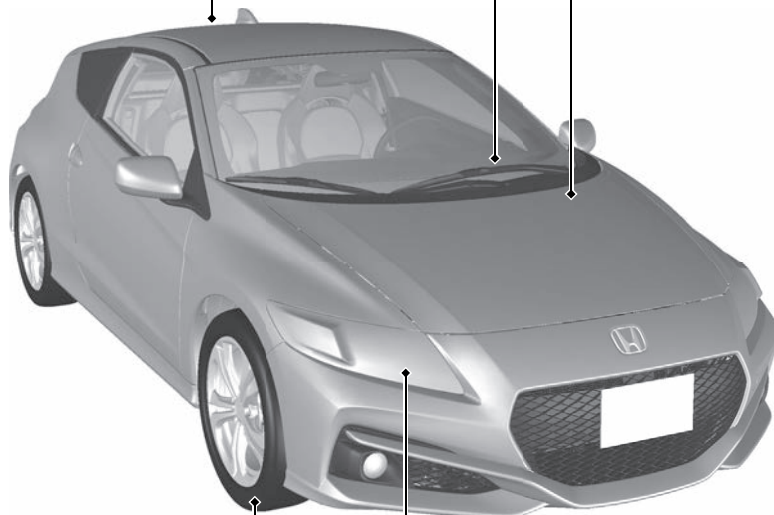
- 2** Locate the hood latch lever, pull the lever up, and lift up the hood.



- 3** When finished, close the hood and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades ➔ P. 328

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windshield.



Tires ➔ P. 331

- Inspect tires and wheels regularly.
- Check tire pressures regularly.
- Install snow tires for winter driving.

Lights ➔ P. 320

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Handling the Unexpected ➔ P. 349

Flat Tire ➔ P. 351

- Park in a safe place and repair the flat tire using the temporary tire repair kit.

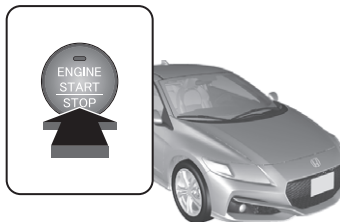
Models with an optional compact spare tire

- Park in a safe place and replace the flat tire with the compact spare tire in the cargo area.



Engine Won't Start ➔ P. 362

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



Overheating ➔ P. 370

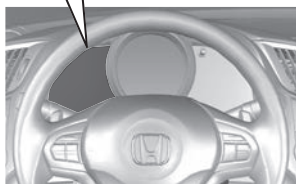
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the hood, open the hood, and let the engine cool down.



Indicators Come On

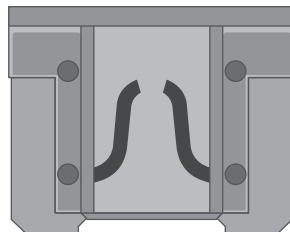
➔ P. 372

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



Blown Fuse ➔ P. 378

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing ➔ P. 383

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?

A

- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.



Q The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?

A The shift lever should be moved to **P**.



Q Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

A This can occur when the ABS activates, and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

Q Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

A The beeper sounds when:

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.
- The Auto Idle Stop is in operation.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

A The beeper sounds when:

- Driver and/or passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

Q Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?

A Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Q Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?

A

- Fasten the driver's seat belt.

Continuously variable transmission models

- Check if the transmission is in **P** or **N**. If so, select any other position.

Manual transmission models

- Check if the transmission is in **N**. If so, select any other position.
- Depress the clutch pedal fully, and release the clutch pedal after the accelerator pedal is gently depressed.

Q

Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?

A

The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions	32
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	34

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts.....	36
Fastening a Seat Belt.....	39
Seat Belt Inspection.....	42

Airbags

Airbag System Components.....	43
Types of Airbags	46
Front Airbags (SRS)	46
Side Airbags.....	50

Side Curtain Airbags.....	53
Airbag System Indicators.....	54
Airbag Care	57

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers	58
Safety of Infants and Small Children ..	60
Safety of Larger Children	64

Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	66
--------------------------	----

Safety Labels

Label Locations	67
-----------------------	----

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passenger always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Your vehicle is not recommended for child passengers

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children ages 12 and under be properly restrained in a back seat. Since this vehicle does not have a back seat, we strongly recommend that you do not carry any child who is not large enough and mature enough to ride in front.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

▣ Important Safety Precautions

Some states, provinces and territories prohibit the use of cell phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

Never carry an infant in a rear-facing child seat in this vehicle.

If an older child must ride in this vehicle, follow all child safety instructions and warnings in this manual.

▣ **Child Safety** P. 58

■ **Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely**

Engaging in cell phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

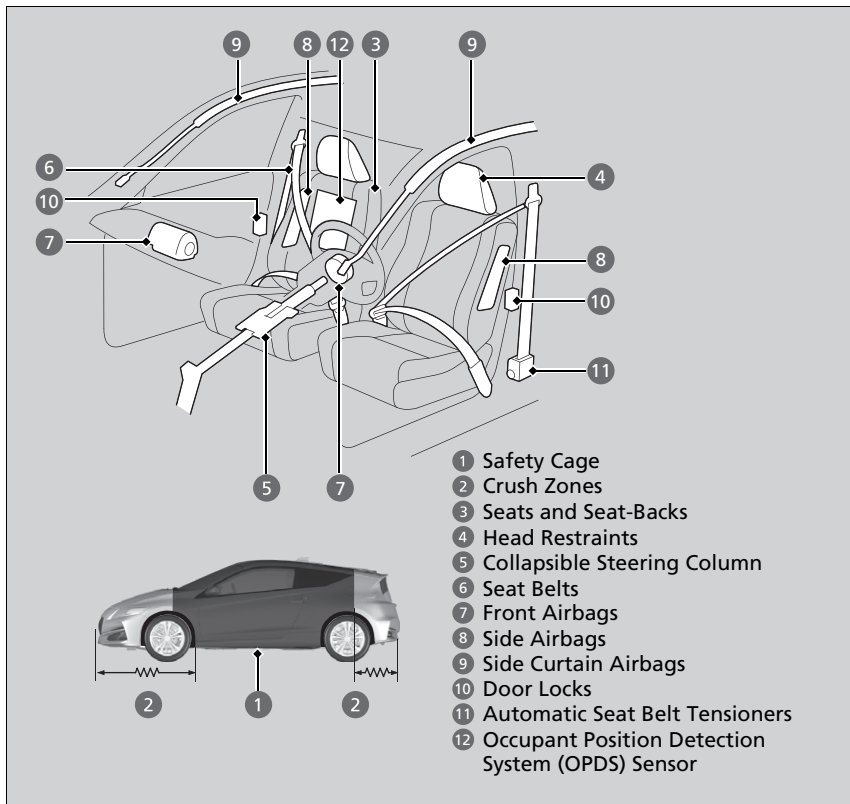
■ **Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ **Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passenger.

► Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help protect you and your passenger during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passenger cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Safety Checklist

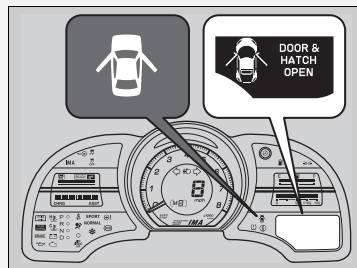
For the safety of you and your passenger, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure both doors and the hatch are closed and locked. Locking the doors and the hatch helps prevent an occupant from being ejected and an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door or the hatch.
 - **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 116
- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
 - **Adjusting the Seats** P. 141
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passenger is properly belted as well.
 - **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 39
- If you choose to ignore our warnings and carry a child in this vehicle, make every effort to protect them by properly using a seat belt or a child seat according to the child's age, height, and weight.
 - **Child Safety** P. 58

➤ Safety Checklist

If the door/hatch open indicator is on, a door and/or the hatch is not completely closed. Close both doors and the hatch tightly until the indicator goes off.

➤ **Door/Hatch Open Indicator** P. 74



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against a passenger, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

Both seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body. The passenger's seat belt has a lockable retractor that must be properly activated when using a forward-facing child seat, should you choose to disregard our recommendations and install one.

➤ **Installing a Child Seat** P. 62

➤ About Your Seat Belts

WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passenger always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most states and all Canadian provinces and territories require you to wear seat belts.

The emergency locking retractor may lock if you lean forward too quickly. Slower movements will allow the belt to extend fully without locking.

■ Proper use of seat belts

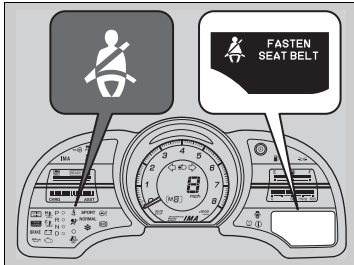
Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

▣ About Your Seat Belts

If your passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

■ Seat Belt Reminder



Your vehicle monitors seat belt use. If the power mode is set to ON before the driver's seat belt is fastened, the beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. If the driver does not fasten the belt before the beeper stops, the indicator will remain on.

The beeper will also periodically sound and the indicator will blink while driving until the driver's and passenger's seat belts are fastened.

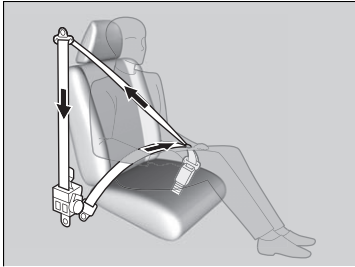
▣ Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON. When no one is sitting in the passenger's seat, or a child or small adult is riding there, the indicator will not come on. This is because the weight sensors in the seat cannot detect their presence.

■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The driver's and passenger's seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



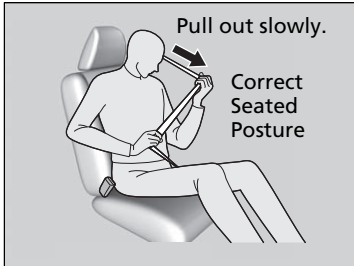
▶▶ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

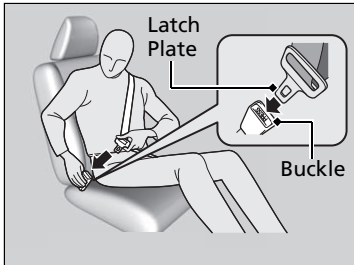
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting your seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

➤ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 141



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

▶▶ Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get caught by closing the door.

Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latches work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
 - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

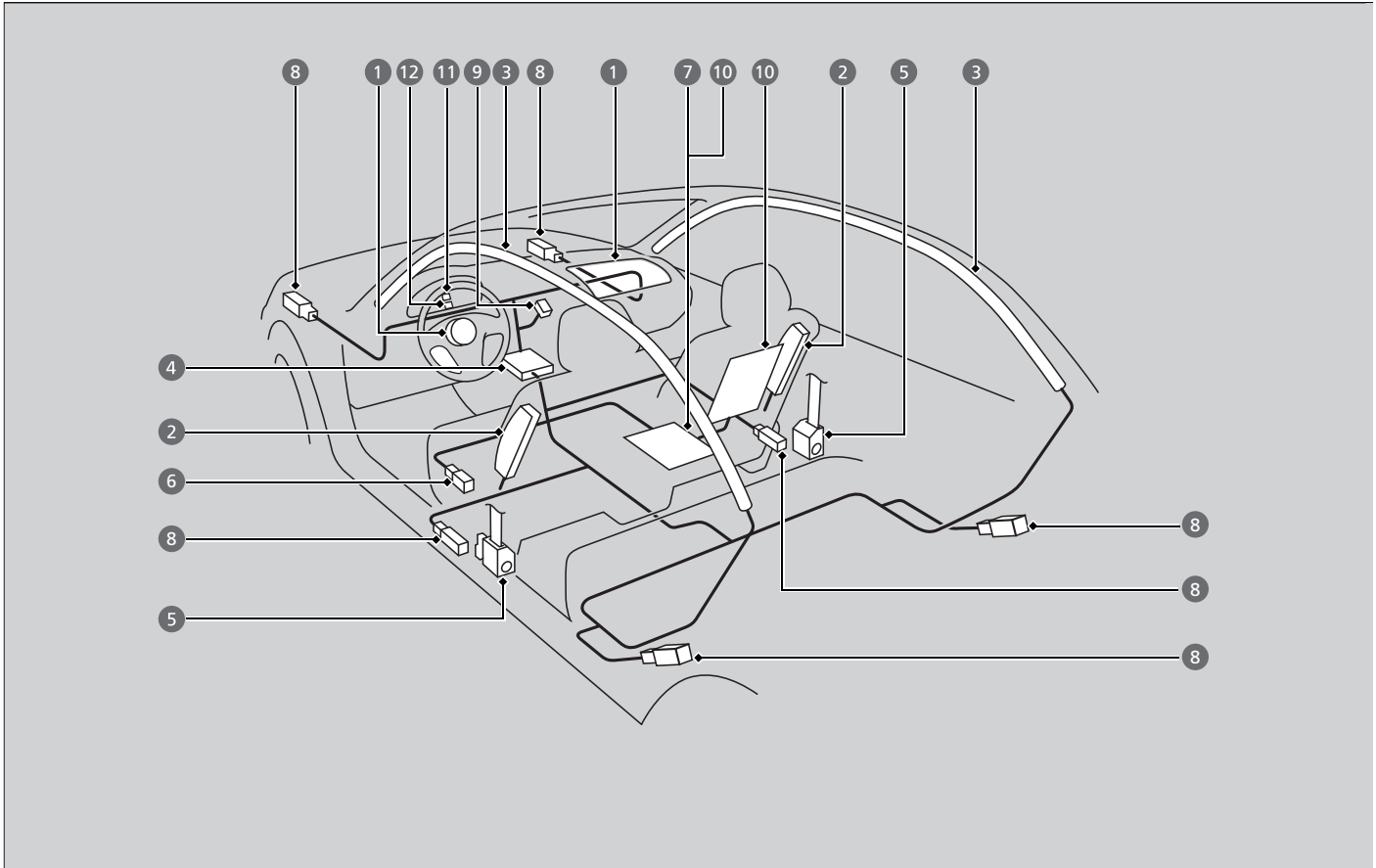
▶▶ Seat Belt Inspection

WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

Airbag System Components



The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- 1 Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- 2 Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- 3 Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- 4 An electronic control unit that continually monitors and can record information about the sensors, the airbag activators, the seat belt tensioners, and driver and passenger seat belt use when the power mode is in ON.
- 5 Automatic seat belt tensioners. The driver's and passenger's seat belts incorporate sensors that detect whether or not they are fastened.
- 6 A driver's seat position sensor. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force.
- 7 Weight sensors in the passenger's seat. The passenger's airbag will be turned off if the weight on the seat is 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child).
- 8 Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- 9 An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off.
- 10 Sensors that can detect if a child or small statured adult is in the deployment path of the passenger's side airbag.
- 11 An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- 12 An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you that the passenger's side airbag has been turned off.

Important Facts about Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts about Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help protect the head and chest of the driver and/or passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the center of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Front Airbags (SRS)

Dual-Stage, Multiple-Threshold Front Airbags (SRS)

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-stage, multiple-threshold front airbags (SRS).

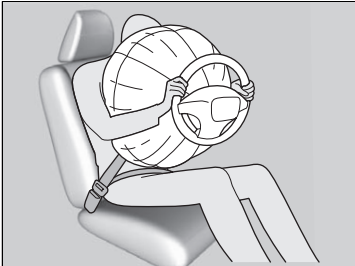
During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, the airbags can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash, whether or not the seat belts are latched, and/or other factors. Frontal airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

⊠ How the Front Airbags Work

Although the driver's and passenger's airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags are designed to supplement seat belts and help save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts, side airbags and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

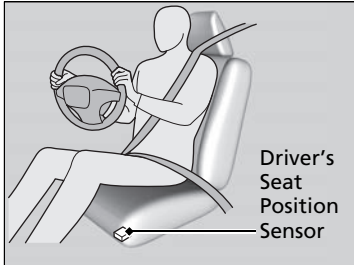
Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

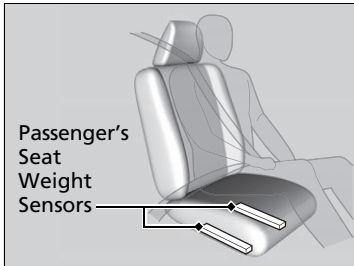
Advanced Airbags

Your front airbags have advanced features to help reduce the likelihood of airbag related injuries to smaller occupants.



The driver's advanced front airbag system includes a seat position sensor.

If the seat is too far forward, the airbag inflates with less force, regardless of the severity of the impact.



The passenger's advanced front airbag system has weight sensors.

Although we recommend against carrying an infant or small child in the passenger seat, if the sensors detect the weight of a child (up to about 65 lbs or 29 kg), the system will automatically turn off the passenger's front airbag.

Advanced Airbags

If there is a problem with the driver's seat position sensor, the SRS indicator will come on and the airbag will inflate with full (normal) force, regardless of the driver's seating position.

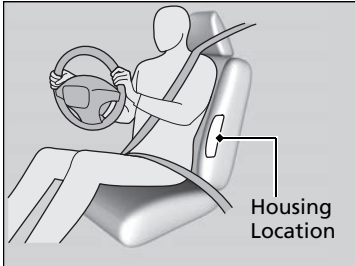
For both advanced front airbags to work properly:

- Do not spill any liquid on or under the seats.
- Do not put any object under the passenger's seat.
- Make sure any objects are positioned properly on the floor. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- All occupants should sit upright and wear their seat belts properly.
- Do not place any cover over the passenger side dashboard.

Side Airbags

The side airbags help protect the upper torso of the driver or a passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

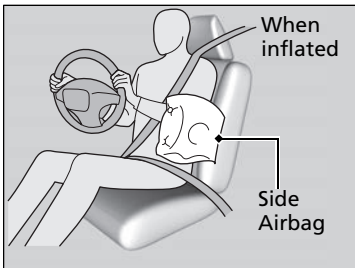
Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the airbag may not deploy when there is no passenger in the passenger seat.

Do not cover or replace the seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.

Improperly replacing or covering seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was toward the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

■ Side Airbag Cutoff System

To reduce the likelihood that a passenger may be injured by an inflating side airbag, the passenger side airbag is automatically turned off when:

- The height sensors detect a child or short-statured adult is seated in the passenger seat.
- The position sensor detects that the passenger is leaning into the deployment path of the side airbag.

When the side airbag cutoff system is activated, the side airbag off indicator comes on.

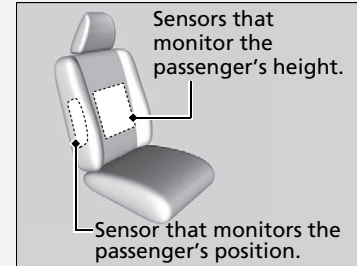
➤ **Side Airbag Off Indicator** P. 56

■ Side Airbag Off Indicator

If the side airbag off indicator comes on, have the passenger sit upright. A few seconds after the passenger is sitting properly, the side airbag will automatically be turned on, and the indicator will go off.

If the passenger is a child, the indicator will remain on so long as the child is seated. Since this vehicle does not have a back seat, we recommend that you do not carry any child who is not large enough and mature enough to ride in front.

▶▶ Side Airbag Cutoff System



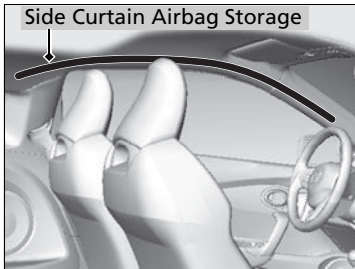
The sensors that monitor the passenger's height and body position may not work if:

- The seat-back is wet
- The passenger is touching a metal or other electrical conductive object
- A seat cushion is on the seat
- The passenger is wearing excessively thick clothing

Side Curtain Airbags

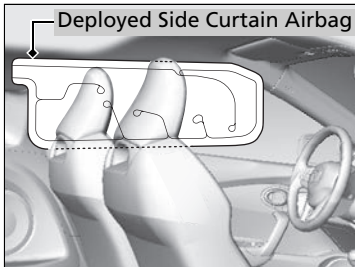
The side curtain airbags help protect the heads of the driver and a passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

⊗ Side Curtain Airbags

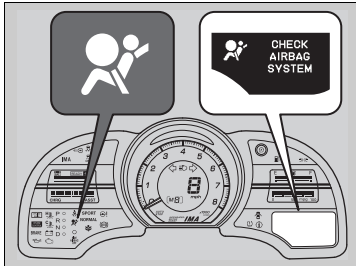
The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the multi-information display.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

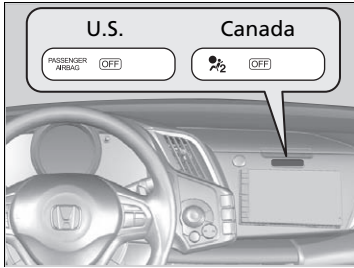
▶ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Passenger Airbag Off Indicator



■ When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator comes on to alert you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off. This occurs when the passenger's weight sensors detect 65 lbs (29 kg) or less, the weight of an infant or small child, on the seat.

Your vehicle is not recommended for child passengers. Never put a rear-facing child seat in this vehicle.

If you decided to disregard our recommendations and transport a small child, they should be properly restrained.

🚗 **Child Safety** P. 58

Objects placed on the seat can also cause the indicator to come on.

If the passenger seat is empty, the passenger's front airbag will not deploy and the indicator will not come on.

🚗 Passenger Airbag Off Indicator

If the indicator comes on with no passenger and no objects on the passenger's seat, or with an adult riding there, something may be interfering with the weight sensors, such as:

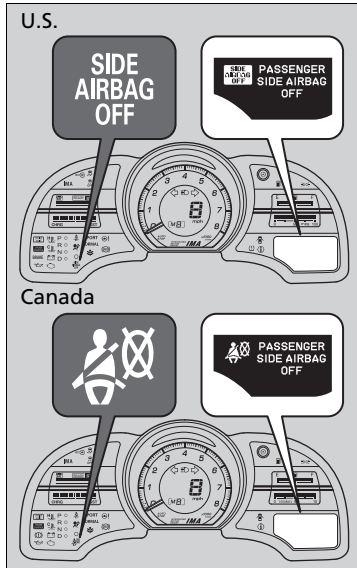
- An object hanging on the seat.
- An object pressing the rear of the seat-back.
- The seat or seat-back is forced back against cargo on the rear trays or floor behind it.
- An object placed under the passenger's seat.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and goes off repeatedly if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold.

■ Side Airbag Off Indicator

■ When the side airbag off indicator comes on



This indicator comes on if the passenger's side airbag has been turned off because the passenger is too small to be sitting in the passenger's seat, is slouching or not sitting upright, or has leaned into the airbag's deployment path.

Unless the passenger is a smaller statured adult or a child, the indicator should go off when the passenger returns to a proper upright sitting position.

▶▶ Side Airbag Off Indicator

When you turn the power mode to ON, the indicator should come on for a few seconds and then go out. If it doesn't come on, stays on, or comes on while driving without a passenger in the seat, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the driver's seat position sensor, weight sensors in the passenger's seat, seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

■ Do not remove or modify a seat without consulting a dealer

This would likely disable the driver's seat position sensor or the weight sensors in the passenger's seat. If it is necessary to remove or modify a seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact a Honda dealer, or for U.S. vehicles, American Honda Automobile Customer Service at 800-999-1009 and for Canadian vehicles, Honda Canada Customer Relations at 888-9-HONDA-9.

✘ Airbag Care

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle accidents are the number one cause of death of children ages 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state, Canadian province and territory requires that children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Since this vehicle does not have a back seat, Honda recommends that you do not carry a child, age 12 or under, as a passenger. This is because:

- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the passenger's seat.
- A child in the passenger's seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat. Because this vehicle does not have a rear seat, we recommend that you do not carry a child ages 12 or under in this vehicle.

Protecting Child Passengers

WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children ages 12 and under be properly restrained in a rear seat. Some states or provinces/territories have laws restricting where children may ride.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in this vehicle.

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt correctly must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle using the lap belt portion of the lap/shoulder belt.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

▶▶ Protecting Child Passengers

⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard (U.S. models) and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

▶▶ **Safety Labels** P. 67

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child seat until the infant reaches the seat maker's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old. **Because rear-facing child seats should not be used in this vehicle, you should never carry an infant in this vehicle.**

▣ Protecting Infants

WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the passenger's seat can result in serious injury or death during a crash.

Never install a rear-facing child seat in this vehicle.

Rear-facing child seats should never be installed in a forward facing position.

Protecting Smaller Children

Since this vehicle does not have a back seat, Honda recommends that you do not carry a child, age 12 or under, as a passenger.

This is because placing a forward-facing child seat in the passenger's seat can be hazardous, even with advanced front airbags that automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off.

If you choose to ignore our warnings and transport a small child in this vehicle, be sure to move the passenger seat as far to the rear as possible, and follow the instructions and guidelines in the following pages.

Selecting a Forward-facing Child Seat

Important consideration when selecting a child seat

Make sure the child seat meets the following three requirements:

- The child seat is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child seat is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child seat is compliant with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213.

Protecting Smaller Children

WARNING

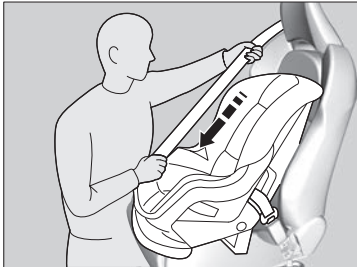
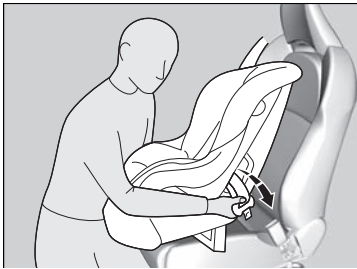
Placing a forward-facing child seat in the passenger's seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in the passenger's seat, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child seat use where you are driving, and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

All child seats must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt. A child whose seat is not properly secured to the vehicle can be endangered in a crash.

■ Installing a Child Seat

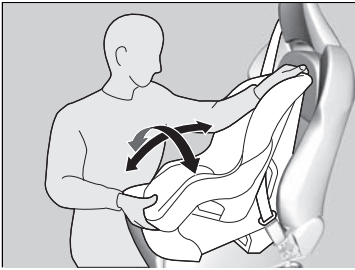


1. Move the passenger seat to the rearmost position.
2. Place the child seat on the passenger seat.
3. Route the seat belt through the child seat according to the seat maker's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
 - ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
4. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
5. Let the seat belt completely wind up into the retractor, then try to pull it out to make sure the retractor is locked.
 - ▶ If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 3 – 5.
6. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
 - ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child seat and push it into the vehicle seat.

▣ Installing a Child Seat

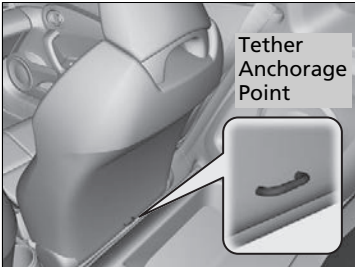
A child seat must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.

For your child's safety, when using a child seat installed using the vehicle's seat belt system, check that the seat is properly secured to the vehicle.

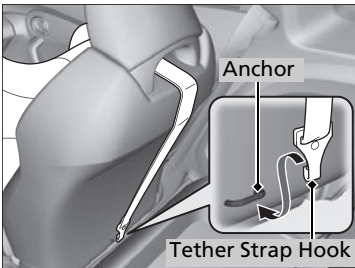


7. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.

■ Adding Security with a Tether



A tether anchorage point is provided behind the passenger seat. A child seat with a tether can be installed, so long as the base of the child seat is secured using a seat belt.



1. Route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
2. Secure the tether strap hook onto the anchor.
3. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.

▣ Installing a Child Seat

A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or another vehicle occupant.

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

▣ Adding Security with a Tether

Since a tether can provide additional security to the lap/shoulder seat belt installation, we recommend using a tether whenever one is available.

Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

Since this vehicle does not have a back seat, Honda recommends that you do not carry a child age 12 or under as a passenger. This is because children who have outgrown child seats are also at risk of being injured or killed by an inflating passenger's front airbag. If a larger child must ride in this vehicle, the information in the following pages provides guidelines to help you decide when a given child may ride in this vehicle, and how to properly protect the child.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child seat, secure the child in the passenger's seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

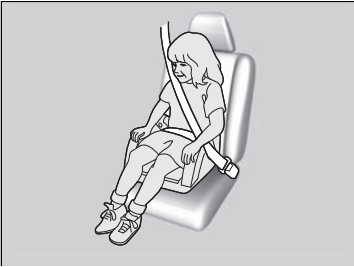
▶ Safety of Larger Children

⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in the vehicle can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in the vehicle, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the passenger's seating position. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.

Protecting Larger Children-Final Checks

If you decide that a child can safely ride in this vehicle, be sure that:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring a child passenger

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on a child passenger. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

☒ Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

Some U.S. states and Canadian provinces and territories require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g. 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the state or province, or territory where you intend to drive.


Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the hatch open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the hatch open, open both windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

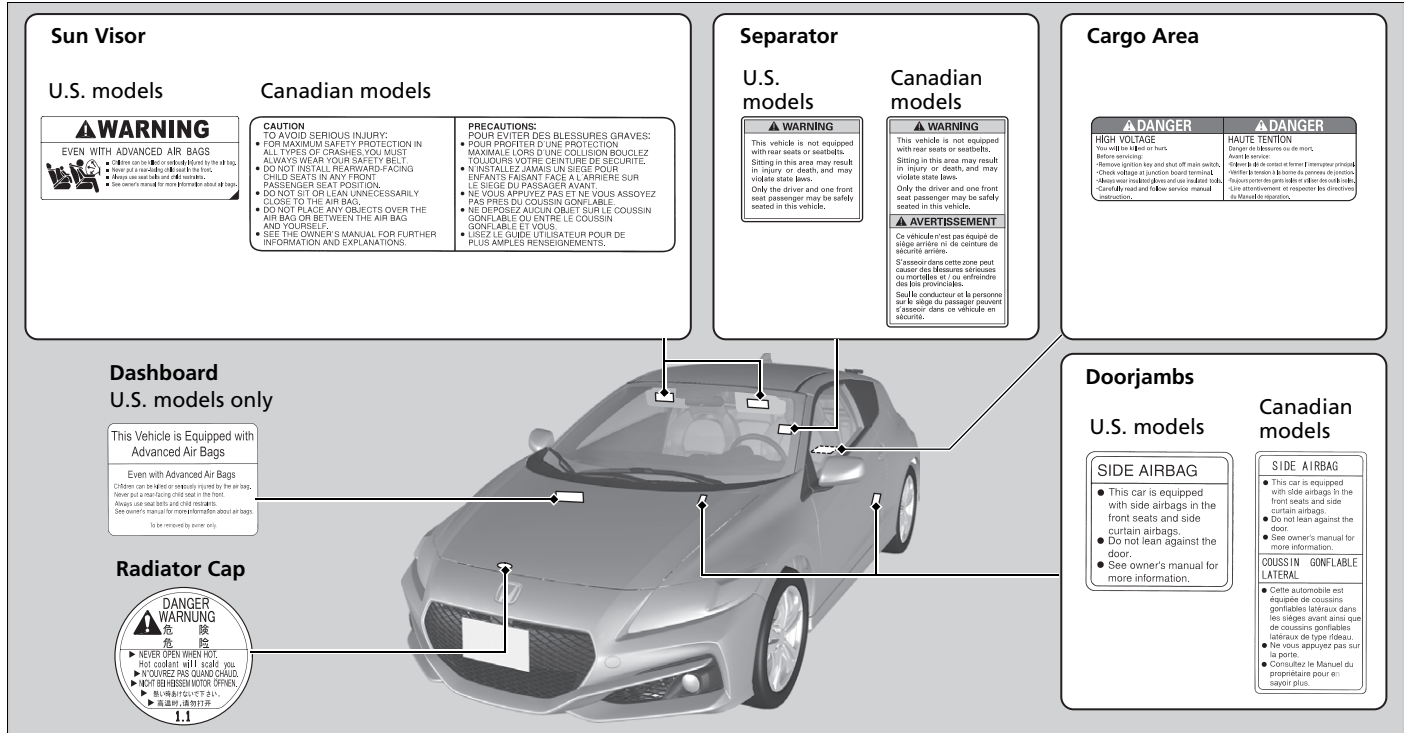
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact a dealer for a replacement.












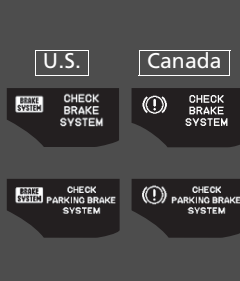


Instrument Panel







This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.












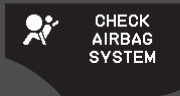


Indicators	70
Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages.....	83
Gauges and Multi-Information Display	
Gauges.....	89
Multi-Information Display	91





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
   (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off if the parking brake has been released. • Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released. • Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. • Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. • The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released. • Comes on for about 15 seconds when you pull the electric parking brake switch while the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). • Stays on for about 15 seconds when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the electric parking brake is set. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on while driving - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving P. 375 • Comes on along with the ABS indicator - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks P. 375 • Blinks and the brake system indicator (amber) system indicator comes on at the same time - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on P. 376 	  




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the electric parking brake switch without depressing the brake pedal. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Depress the brake pedal to release the parking brake. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Parking Brake P. 284 	
	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system. Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Comes on while driving - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. 	
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Immediately stop in a safe place. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On P. 372 	






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off either when the engine starts or after several seconds if the engine did not start. If “readiness codes” have not been set, it blinks five times before it goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control system. • Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Readiness codes are part of the on board diagnostics for the emissions control systems. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Testing of Readiness Codes P. 393 • Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Blinks while driving - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take the vehicle to a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks P. 374 	
	12-volt Battery Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on when the 12-volt battery is not charging. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on while driving - Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger in order to reduce electricity consumption. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► If the 12V Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 373 	
	Transmission Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Blinks if the transmission system has a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blinks while driving - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. 	


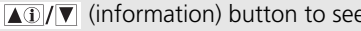




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	<p>Seat Belt Reminder Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on and the beeper sounds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. • If the passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. • Blinks while driving if either you or your passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and your passenger fasten your seat belts. • Stays on after you or your passenger has fastened the seat belt - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Seat Belt Reminder P. 37 	 
	<p>Low Fuel Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 1.8 U.S. gal./6.9 Liter left). • Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. • Blinks - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 288 	
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Supplemental restraint system - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system - Seat belt tensioner 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	
	Door/Hatch Open Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if the hatch or either door is not completely closed. • The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if the hatch or either door is opened while driving. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Goes off when both doors and the hatch are closed. 	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Blinks when VSA® is active. • Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA® system. • Comes on if there is a problem with the hill start assist system. • Comes on if there is a problem with the creep aid system (Continuously Variable Transmission) or the brake assist system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System P. 276 	 
	VSA® OFF Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on when you deactivate VSA®. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ VSA® On and Off P. 277 	—






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ► If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On P. 375 	
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">U.S. models only</div> 	Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON. • May come on briefly if the power mode to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - One or more tires' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been calibrated. • Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS, or when a compact spare tire* is temporarily installed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on while driving - Stop in a safe place, check tire pressures, and inflate the tire(s) if necessary. • Stays on after the tires are inflated to the recommended pressures - The system needs to be calibrated. ► Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P. 280 • Blinks and remains on - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare, get your regular tire repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can. 	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">CHECK TIRE PRESSURE</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">TPMS CHECK TPMS SYSTEM</div>







Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
 <p>(Red)</p>	<p>High Temperature Indicator (Red)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Blinks when the engine coolant temperature goes up, and stays on if the temperature continues to rise. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Goes off, then comes on blue when the engine coolant temperature is low. • Blinks while driving - Drive slowly to prevent overheating. • Stays on while driving - Immediately stop in a safe place and allow the engine to cool. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Overheating P. 370 	
 <p>(Amber)</p>	<p>Low Temperature Indicator (Blue)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on when the engine coolant temperature is low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the indicator stays on after the engine has reached normal operating temperature, there may be a problem with the temperature sensors. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. 	
<p>IMA</p>	<p>IMA System Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the IMA system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remains on or does not come on at all - Avoid high speed driving and have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the IMA Indicator Comes On P. 377 	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	System Message Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the multi-information display appears at the same time. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • While the indicator is on, press the  (information) button to see the message again. • Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the multi-information display. Take the appropriate action for the message. • The multi-information display does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is canceled, or the  button is pressed. 	—
	Side Airbag Off Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on when the passenger side airbag system is automatically shut off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It does not mean there is a problem with your side airbags. • Comes on when nobody is sitting in the passenger seat - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Comes on when someone is sitting in the seat - Have the passenger sit properly. 	
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the high beam headlights are on. 	—	—

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The turn signal indicators blink when you operate the turn signal lever. If you press the hazard warning button, both indicators and all turn signals blink at the same time. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Does not blink or blinks rapidly - A turn signal light bulb has blown. Change the bulb immediately. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Replacing Light Bulbs P. 324, 325 	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on whenever the light switch is on, or in AUTO* when the exterior lights are on. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened. 	—
	Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the fog lights are on. 	—	—
	Shift Lever Position Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates the current shift lever position. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Shifting P. 256 	—
	M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the 7-speed manual shift mode is applied. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode P. 258 	—







* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Immobilizer System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on briefly when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blinks - You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then select the ON mode again. • Repeatedly blinks - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur. 	—
 Indicator	Security System Alarm Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blinks when the Security System Alarm has been set. 	<p>➤ Security System Alarm P. 122</p>	—
	CRUISE MAIN Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when you press the CRUISE button. 	<p>➤ Cruise Control P. 273</p>	—
	CRUISE CONTROL Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on if you have set a speed for cruise control. 	<p>➤ Cruise Control P. 273</p>	—
	Auto Idle Stop Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blinks when Auto Idle Stop is in operation. The engine automatically shuts off. 	<p>➤ Auto Idle Stop P. 264, 267</p>	—


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
 UP	Shift Up Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on briefly when you set the power mode to ON. • Comes on when shifting up is recommended. 	➤ Shift Up/Down Indicators P. 262	—
DOWN 	Shift Down Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on briefly when you set the power mode to ON. • Comes on when shifting down is recommended. 		
SPORT	SPORT Mode Indicator* ¹	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on when you press the SPORT mode button. 	➤ 3-Mode Drive System P. 270	
NORMAL	NORMAL Mode Indicator* ¹	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON. • Comes on when you press the NORMAL mode button. 	➤ 3-Mode Drive System P. 270	
	ECON Mode Indicator* ¹	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON. • Comes on when you press the ECON mode button. 	➤ 3-Mode Drive System P. 270	



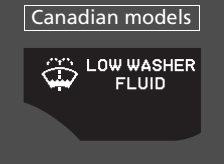

*1: The driving mode message on the multi-information display appears for a few seconds when you press the appropriate mode button.


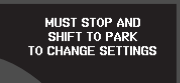



* Not available on all models





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Plus Sport System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on while certain conditions that can activate the Plus Sport System are met. 	 Plus Sport System P. 271	—
	Plus Sport READY Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the Plus Sport System is available. • Stays on when the Plus Sport System stands by to be activated. • Goes off when the system is in operation. 	 Plus Sport System P. 271	—
	Plus Sport Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the Plus Sport System is available. • Blinks by pressing the S+ (Plus Sport) button when the Plus Sport System stands by to be activated. • Blinks while the Plus Sport System is in operation. 	 Plus Sport System P. 271	—







Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

The following messages appear only on the multi-information display. Press the  (information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the fuel fill cap is loose or is not installed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Check/Tighten Fuel Cap Message P. 374
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if there is a problem with the DRL system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Daytime Running Lights P. 133
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;">Canadian models</div> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the washer fluid is low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refill washer fluid. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Refilling Window Washer Fluid P. 319
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon. Consequently, SERVICE DUE NOW and SERVICE PAST DUE follow. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Maintenance Minder Messages on the Multi-Information Display P. 303


Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears when the IMA battery is significantly low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drive continuously or, if necessary, allow the vehicle to idle in an open area until the message disappears.
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears while you are customizing the settings for the following reasons: <div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;">Continuously variable transmission models</div> The shift lever is moved out of P. <div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;">Manual transmission models</div> The parking brake is released. 	<p style="text-align: center;"> How to customize P. 98</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears once if the outside temperature is below 5°F or 3°C while the power mode is in ON 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is a possibility that the road surface is icy and slippery.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on as soon as a problem is detected in the smart entry system or keyless starting system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you close the door with the power mode is in ON without the smart entry remote inside the vehicle. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disappears when you bring the smart entry remote back inside the vehicle and close the door. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Smart Entry Remote Reminder P. 128
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace the battery as soon as possible. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Replacing the Button Battery P. 342
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the smart entry remote battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. The beeper sounds six times. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bring the smart entry remote in front of the ENGINE START/STOP button to be touched with. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak P. 364


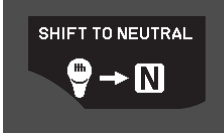


Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the ENGINE START/STOP button twice with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears three seconds after the To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button, then To Start Engine messages appeared sequentially. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unless you bring the smart entry remote in front of the ENGINE START/STOP button, this message does not appear. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak P. 364
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px; text-align: center;">U.S.</div>  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px; text-align: center;">Canada</div> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if there is a problem with the starter system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hold the ENGINE START/STOP button up to 15 seconds to start the engine. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Starting the Engine P. 251
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Starting the Engine P. 251

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY. 	—

Continuously variable transmission models

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if you press the ENGINE START/STOP button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P. 	<p>U.S. models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move the shift lever to P. The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF. <p>Canada models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Push the ENGINE START/STOP button twice with your foot off the brake pedal after moving the shift lever to P.

Manual transmission models

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>FULLY DEPRESS CLUTCH PEDAL</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the clutch pedal is not fully depressed while the Auto Idle Stop is in operation, and the engine is ready to restart. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fully depress the clutch pedal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Auto Idle Stop P. 267
 <p>SHIFT TO NEUTRAL</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the shift lever is in any forward gear position, and the Auto Idle Stop operating time has continued for a while. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shift to N. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Auto Idle Stop P. 267
 <p>RESTART ENGINE</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the engine does not automatically restart for the following reasons while the Auto Idle Stop is in operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The IMA battery charge is low. There is a problem with the system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Manually start the engine. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Starting the Engine P. 251
 <p>TO UNLOCK WHEEL: PUSH + ROTATE</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the steering wheel is locked. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button at the same time.

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in mph or km/h.

Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

Instant Fuel Economy Gauge

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in mpg or l/100 km.

⌘ Gauges



Press and hold the **km/h/mph** change button until you hear a beep. The speedometer reading and the displayed measurements switch between mph and km/h. The display change message appears for a few seconds.

⌘ Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

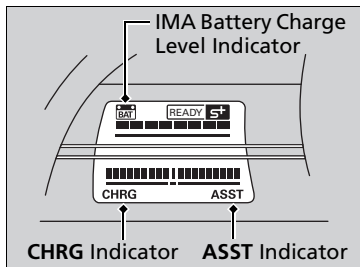
You should refuel when the reading approaches **E**. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

⌘ Instant Fuel Economy Gauge

Press and hold the **km/h/mph** change button to switch the measurement.

■ IMA Battery Charge Level Indicator



The remaining battery charge level is displayed as a bar graph.

■ Electric Motor Assist Indicator (ASST)

The degree to which the electric motor is assisting the engine is displayed by the **ASST** indicator bar.

■ Battery Charge in Progress (CHRG)

The degree to which the IMA battery is being charged is displayed by the **CHRG** indicator bar.

▣ IMA Battery Charge Level Indicator

The IMA battery charge level may decrease rapidly under the following conditions:

- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the IMA battery has been disconnected.
- When the IMA battery control system is correcting its reading.

The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.

▣ Electric Motor Assist Indicator (ASST)

If the IMA battery is too hot or too cold, the IMA battery's output power is limited to protect the battery. This disables the IMA assist and Auto Idle Stop, even though the battery is well charged.

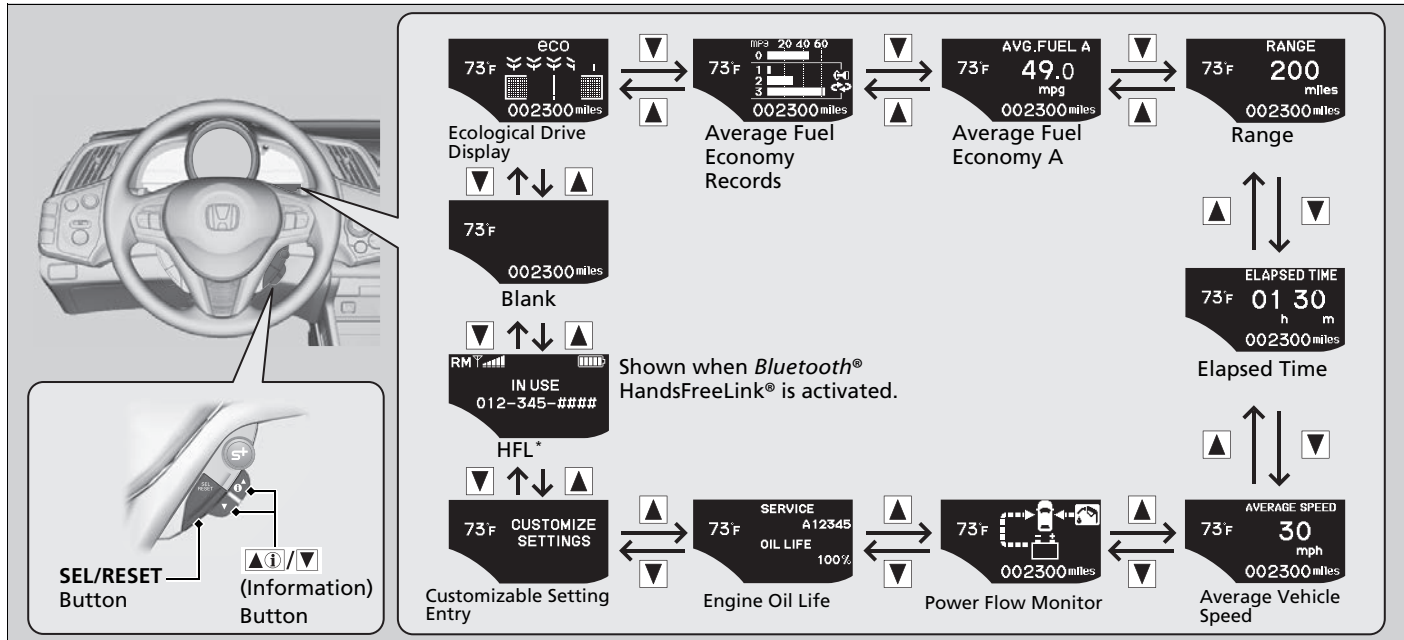
It takes a short time to normalize the IMA battery's output power depending on the weather.

Multi-Information Display

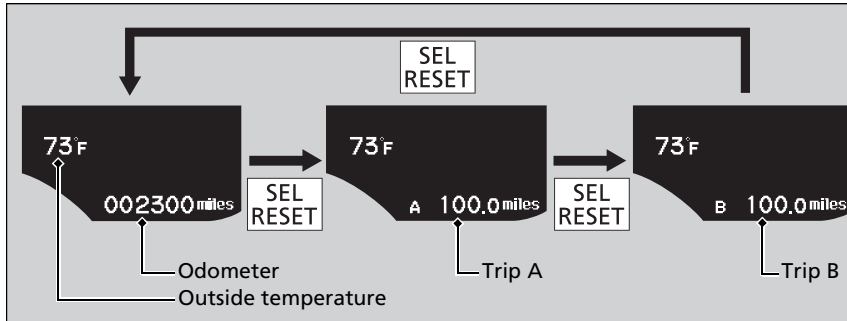
The multi-information display shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature, and other gauges. It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

Switching the Display

Press the ▲(i)/▼ (information) button or the **SEL/RESET** button to change the display.



* Not available on all models



■ Odometer

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure 2 separate trips.

■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the **SEL/RESET** button. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

▣ Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the **SEL/RESET** button.

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S.) or Celsius (Canada).

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to $\pm 5^{\circ}\text{F}$ or $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$ if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

■ Elapsed Time

The elapsed time display shows the time during one drive cycle.

■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in mph or km/h since Trip A was reset.

⌘ Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Use the multi-information display's customized features to correct the temperature.

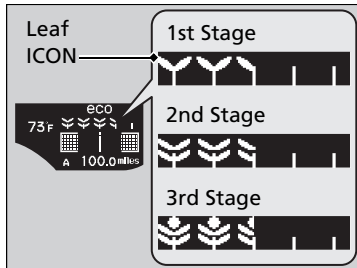
➤ **Customized Features** P. 98

⌘ Elapsed Time

You can change the elapsed time reset criteria.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 98

■ Ecological Drive Display



■ Real-Time score

The Eco assist scoring system is a point system you can use to monitor your driving style and its impact on fuel economy. Points are represented by leaf icons on the multi-information display. Leaves are:

- Accumulated when your driving style is fuel efficient.
- Deducted when your style is not fuel efficient.

■ Reset the system

To clear all leaves and lifetime points, complete the following steps within 30 seconds, and do not run the engine.

1. Continuously variable transmission models

The shift lever must be in **P**.

Manual transmission models

The parking brake must be set.

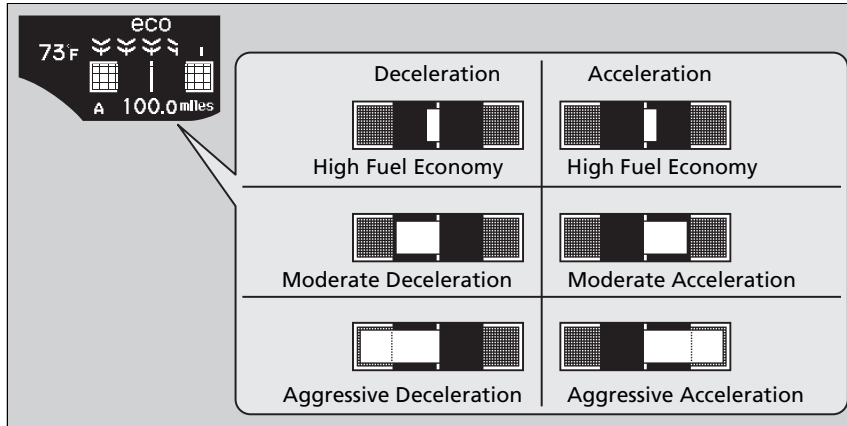
2. Set the power mode to ON.
3. Make sure the **NORMAL** mode is selected.
4. Depress the brake pedal twice.
 - ▶ The ambient meter color changes from blue to green.
 - ▶ When the **METER COLOR CHANGE** setting on the multi-information display is off, the color stays in blue.
5. Press the **ECON** mode button.
6. Press the **NORMAL** mode button.
 - ▶ The ambient meter color turns off.
7. Set the power mode to OFF.

⌘ Reset the system

If the ECON mode is on in step 2, press the **NORMAL** mode button. Set the power mode to OFF, then go to step 1.

■ **Feedback with eco drive bar**

The bar extends to the right or left of the center line while driving. The more aggressive the acceleration is, the further the bar extends to the right. The more aggressive the deceleration is, the further the bar extends to the left. Keep the bar near the center line for better fuel economy while driving.

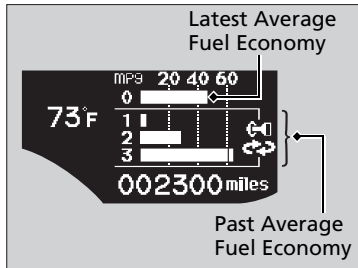


▶▶ Feedback with eco drive bar

Continuously variable transmission models

The ambient meter color changes corresponding to the level of eco drive bar extension.

■ Average Fuel Economy Records



Shows the average fuel economy for the last three driving cycles (1-3), and the current driving cycle (0) in mpg or l/100 km.

Each time you set the power mode to ON, the display is updated, and the oldest record is deleted.

■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in mpg or l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, its average fuel economy is also reset at the same time.

■ Engine Oil Life

Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.

▶ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 303

■ Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®*

Shows your paired cell phone's information.

▶ **Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®** P. 213

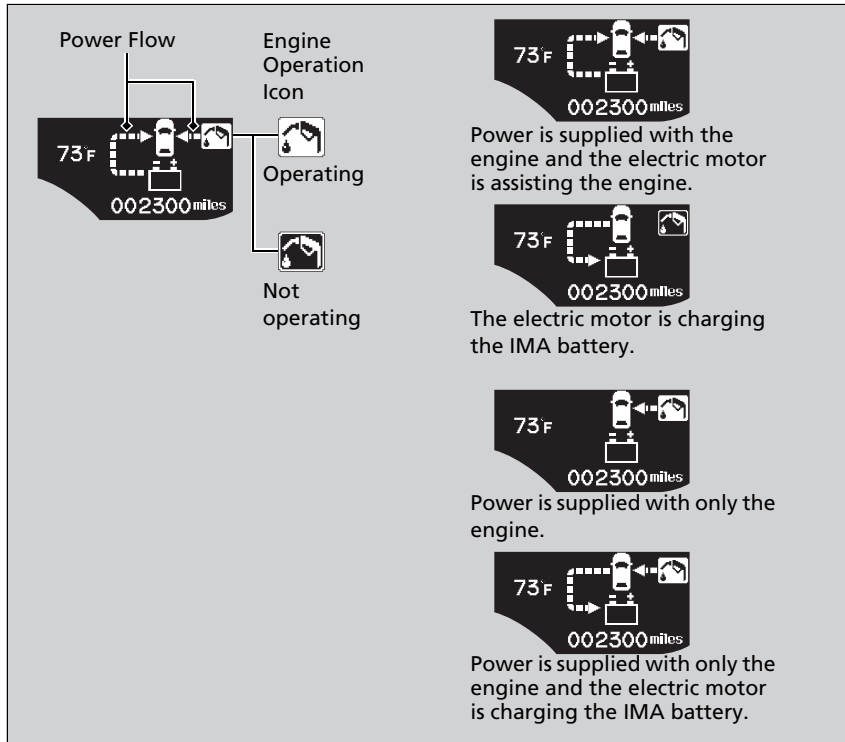
▶▶ Average Fuel Economy

You can choose whether to reset trip A and average fuel economy A when you refuel.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 98

Power Flow Monitor

Displays engine and electric motor power flow and whether the system is assisting the engine or charging the battery.



Power Flow Monitor


The displayed power flow may not correspond to the **ASST/CHRG** indicators directly.

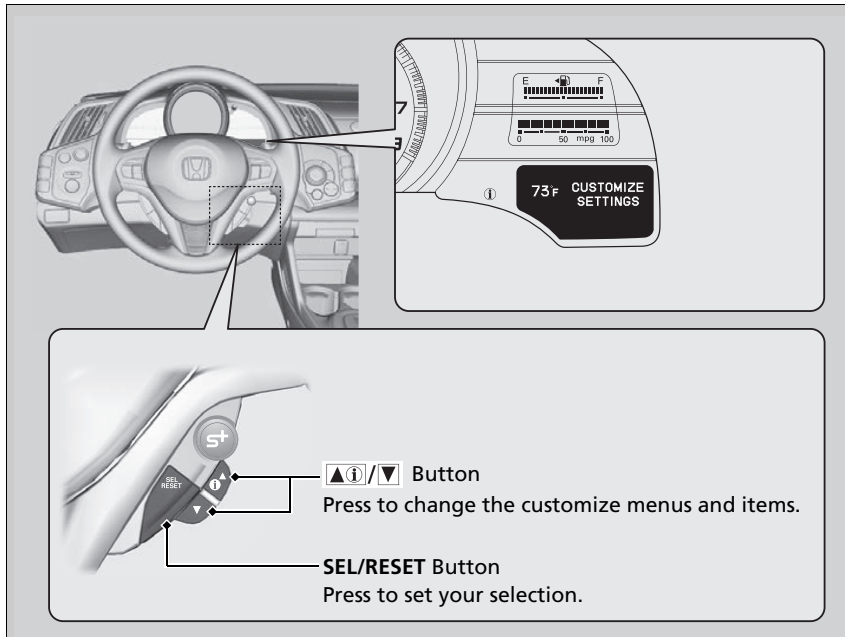
- ▶ **Electric Motor Assist Indicator (ASST)** P. 90
- ▶ **Battery Charge in Progress (CHRG)** P. 90

■ Customized Features


Use the multi-information display to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

Select the **CUSTOMIZE SETTINGS** screen by pressing the  button while the power mode is in ON, the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift lever is in **P** (Continuously Variable Transmission), and the parking brake is set (manual transmission). Press the **SEL/RESET** button to select **CHG SETTING** screen.



▶▶ Customized Features

To select customizing items, press the  button.

- ▶ **List of customizable options** P. 101
- ▶ **Example of customizing settings** P. 104

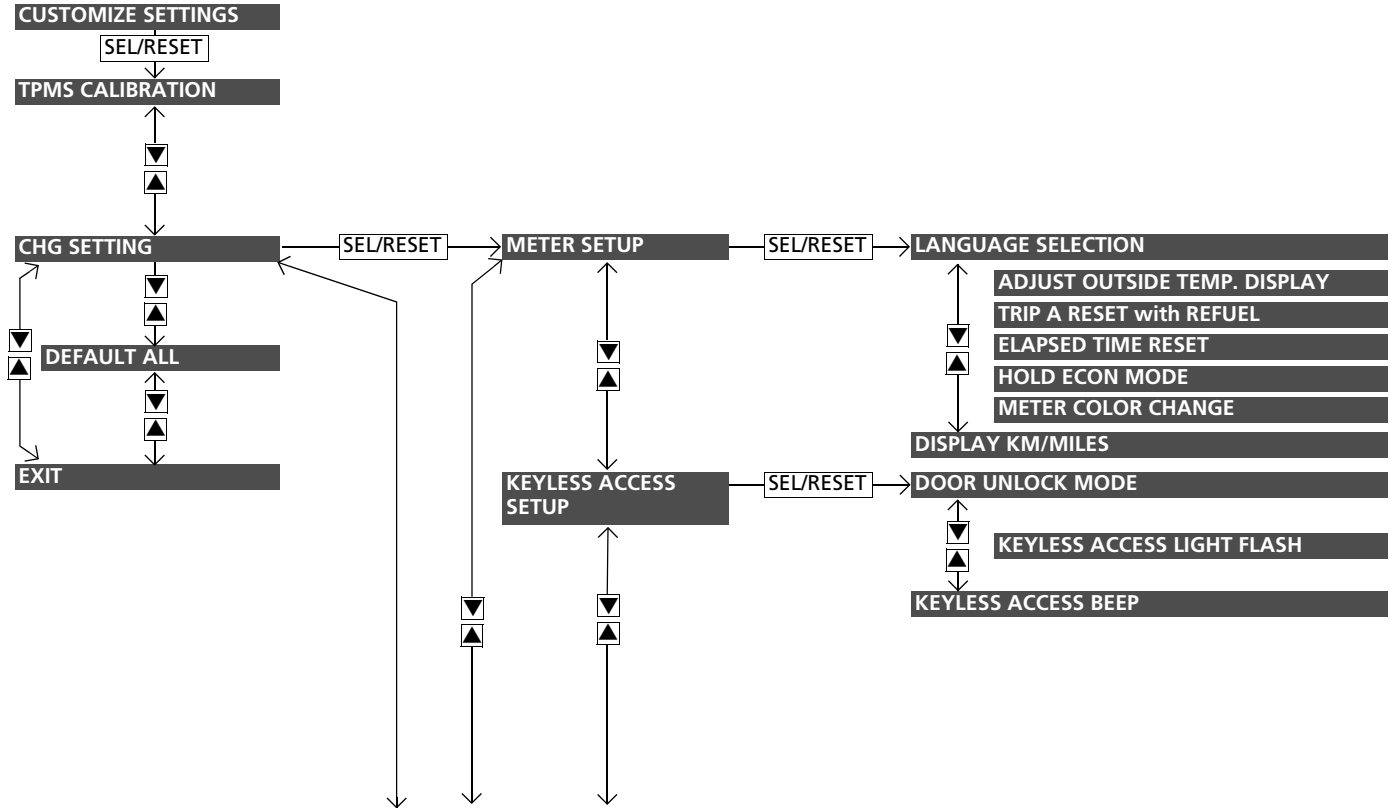
When you customize settings:

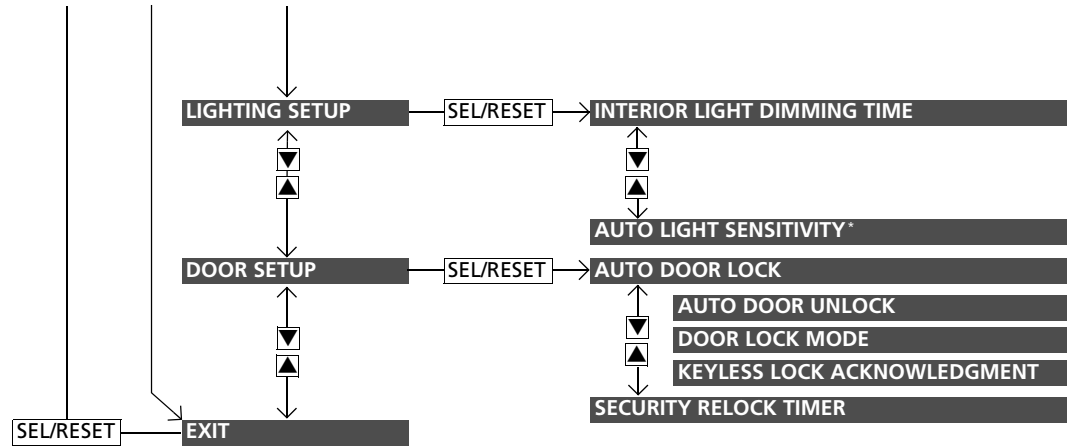
Continuously variable transmission models
Shift to **P**.

Manual transmission models
Set the parking brake.

■ Customization flow

Press the ▲(i)/▼ button.





■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable settings
TPMS Calibration		Calibrates the TPMS.	CANCEL, CALIBRATE
	Language Selection	Changes the displayed language.	English*¹, French, Spanish
	Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-5°F ~ ±0°F*¹ ~ +5°F -3°C ~ ±0°C*¹ ~ +3°C
Meter Setup	Trip A Reset with Refuel	Sets Trip A and the average fuel economy to reset when you refuel.	ON, OFF*¹
	Elapsed Time Reset	Changes the resetting conditions of the elapsed time.	IGN OFF*¹, Trip A, Trip B
	Hold ECON Mode	Maintains ECON mode.	ON, OFF*¹
	Meter Color Change	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	ON*¹, OFF
	Display Km/Miles	Changes the displayed measurement on the multi-information display.	AUTO*¹, KM, MILES

*1: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable settings
Keyless Access Setup	Door Unlock Mode	Changes which doors unlock when you press the driver's door lock/unlock button.	DRIVER DOOR ONLY*¹/ALL DOORS
	Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to blink when you unlock/lock the doors.	ON*¹/OFF
	Keyless Access Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	ON*¹/OFF
Lighting Setup	Interior Light Dimming Time	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	60 sec, 30 sec*¹, 15 sec
	Auto Light Sensitivity*²	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	Max, High, Mid*¹, Low, Min

*1: Default Setting

*2: If equipped

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable settings
Door Setup	Auto Door Lock	Changes the setting for when the doors and the hatch automatically lock.	Shift from <input type="checkbox"/> P (continuously variable transmission models only), With VEH SPD ^{*1} , OFF
	Auto Door Unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors and the hatch automatically unlock.	Shift to <input type="checkbox"/> P ^{*2} , IGN off ^{*3} , OFF Driver Door ^{*1} , All Doors
	Door Lock Mode	Sets up either the driver's door or both doors and the hatch to unlock on the first push of the remote.	Driver Door ^{*1} All Doors
	Keyless Lock Answer Back	LOCK/UNLOCK - The exterior lights flash LOCK (2nd push) - The beeper sounds	ON ^{*1} , OFF
	Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors and the hatch to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening either door or the hatch.	90 sec, 60 sec, 30 sec ^{*1}
Default All		Sets/Cancel all the customized settings as default.	Set, Cancel

*1: Default Setting

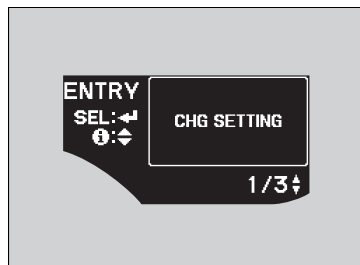
*2: Default Setting on continuously variable transmission models

*3: Default Setting on manual transmission models

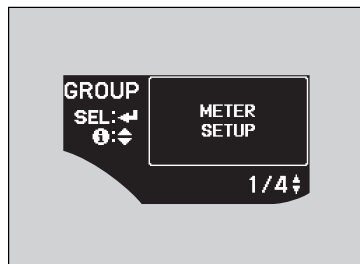
■ Example of customizing settings

The steps for changing **TRIP A RESET with REFUEL** setting to ON are shown below.

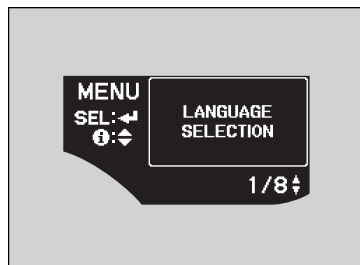
The default setting for **TRIP A RESET with REFUEL** is OFF.



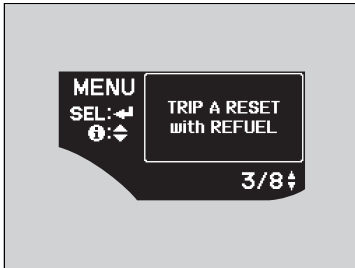
1. Press the button until **CUSTOMIZE SETTINGS** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.



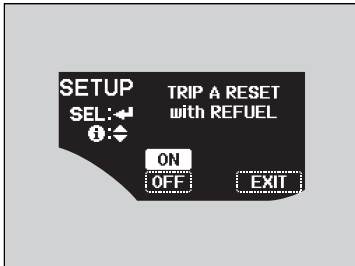
2. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.



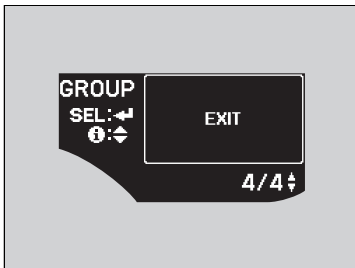
3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button again.



4. Press the **▲(i)/▼** button until **TRIP A RESET with REFUEL** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.



5. Press the **▲(i)/▼** button and select **ON**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.



6. Press the **▲(i)/▼** button until **EXIT** appears in the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
7. Repeat step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Clock	108
Locking and Unlocking the Doors	
Key Types and Functions	109
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside	112
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside	116
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking	118
Opening and Closing the Hatch	119
Security System	
Immobilizer System	122
Security System Alarm.....	122
Opening and Closing the Windows	124

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel	
ENGINE START/STOP Button.....	126
Turn Signals	129
Light Switches.....	129
Fog Lights*	133
Daytime Running Lights	133
Wipers and Washers	134
Brightness Control	136
Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror * Button	137
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	138

Adjusting the Mirrors	
Interior Rearview Mirror	139
Power Door Mirrors	140
Adjusting the Seats	
Adjusting the Seat Positions.....	141
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items	
Interior Lights	146
Interior Convenience Items	147
Climate Control System	
Using Automatic Climate Control	155
Automatic Climate Control Sensors	157

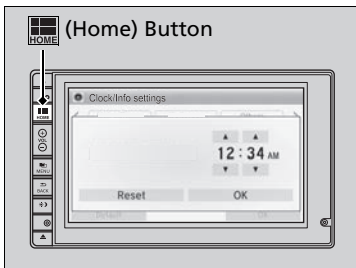
* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock

Models without navigation system

You can adjust the time in the clock display, with the power mode in ON.

Adjusting the Time



Models with navigation system

The navigation system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically.

Adjusting the Clock

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 202

Key Types and Functions

This vehicle comes with the following keys:

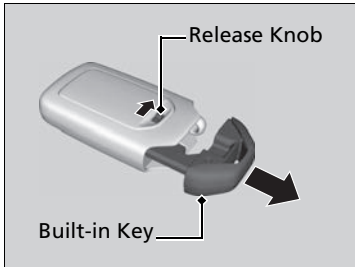
Keys



Use the key to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock all the doors and hatch.

You can also use the remote transmitter to lock and unlock the doors and hatch.

Smart entry remote



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, pull it out while sliding the release knob. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the smart entry remote until it clicks.

Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

Immobilizer System P. 122

The keys contain precision electronics.

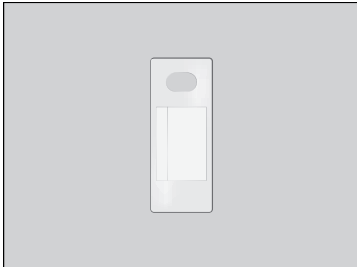
Adhere to the following advice to prevent damage to the electronics:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

☒ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the smart entry remote when locking/unlocking the doors, opening the hatch, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors or opening the hatch or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the smart entry remote together with telecommunications equipment, notebook computers, mobile phones, or wireless machines.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the smart entry remote.

⌘ Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength

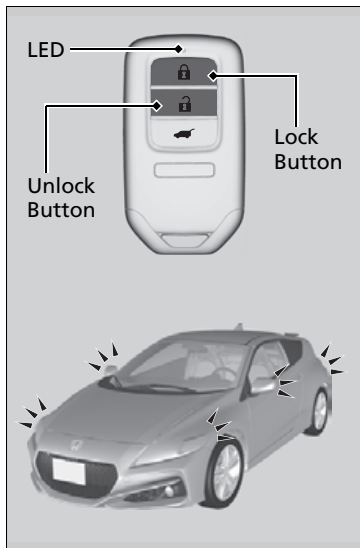
Communication between the smart entry remote and the vehicle consumes the smart entry remote's battery.

Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

The battery is consumed whenever the smart entry remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



■ Locking the doors

Press the lock button.

Once:

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and hatch lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

- ▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

■ Unlocking the doors

Press the unlock button.

Once:

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door unlocks.

Twice:

- ▶ The passenger's door and the hatch unlock.

☒ Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and the hatch will automatically relock. You can change the relock timer setting.

☒ **Customized Features** P. 98

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior lights come on when you press the UNLOCK button.

No doors opened: The lights fade out after 30 seconds.

Doors relocked with the remote: The lights go off immediately.

☒ **Interior Lights** P. 146

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low. Replace the button battery as soon as possible.

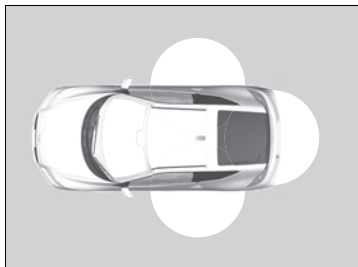
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

☒ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 342

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

☒ **Customized Features** P. 98

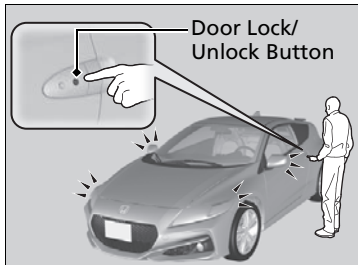
■ Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors, hatch.

You can lock/unlock the doors within a radius of about 32 inches (80 cm) of the outside door handle.

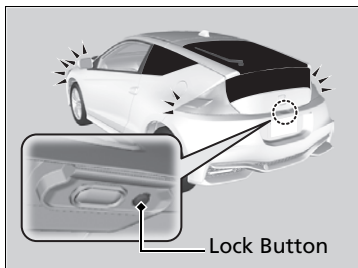
You can open the hatch within about 32 inches (80 cm) radius from the hatch release button.



■ Locking the doors and hatch

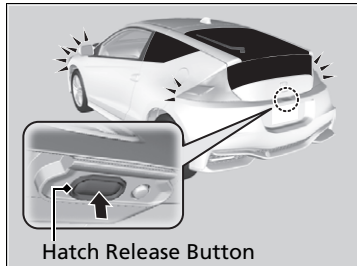
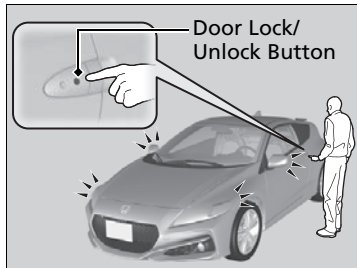
Press the door lock/unlock button on the door handle or lock button on the hatch.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds once; all the doors, hatch and the security system sets.



▣ Using the Keyless Access System

- Do not leave the smart entry remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may not open if you pull the door handle immediately after pressing the lock/unlock button. Press the lock/unlock button again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.



■ Unlocking the doors and hatch

Press the driver's door lock/unlock button:

- ▶ The driver's door unlocks.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Press and hold the driver's door lock/unlock button for more than 2 seconds:

- ▶ All the doors and hatch unlock.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Press the front passenger's door lock/unlock button:

- ▶ All the doors and the hatch unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Press the hatch release button:

- ▶ The hatch unlocks.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

▶▶ Using the Keyless Access System

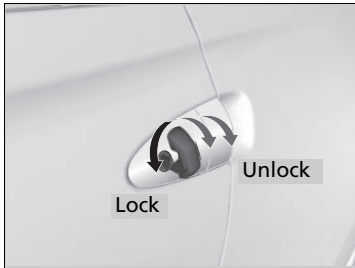
- Even within the 32 inches (80 cm) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the smart entry remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The smart entry remote may not operate if it is too close to the door, door glass and hatch.

If you do not open a door or the hatch within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the smart entry remote, the doors and hatch will automatically relock.

You can change the relock timer setting.

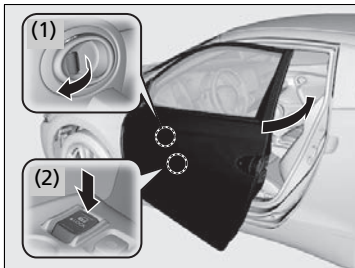
▶▶ **Customized Features** P. 98

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key



Fully insert the key and turn it.

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key



■ Locking the driver's door

Pull the lock tab rearward (1) or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction (2), and close the door.

■ Locking the passenger's door

Pull the lock tab rearward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

The doors and the hatch cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle, and either door or the hatch is open.

☒ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door with a key, all the doors and hatch lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the passenger's door and the hatch.

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➤ **Customized Features P. 98**

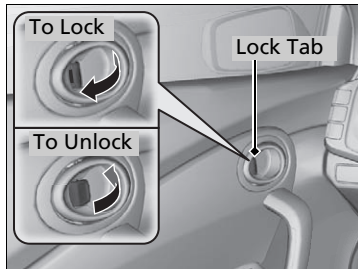
☒ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the doors and hatch lock at the same time.

Make sure you have the key in your hand before locking the door to prevent it from being locked in the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

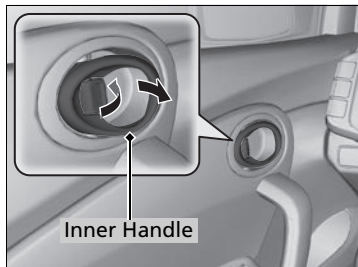
■ Using the Lock Tab



■ **Locking a door**
Pull the lock tab.

■ **Unlocking a door**
Push the lock tab in.

■ Unlocking Using the Inner Handle of Doors



Pull the door inner handle.

- ▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

☞ Using the Lock Tab

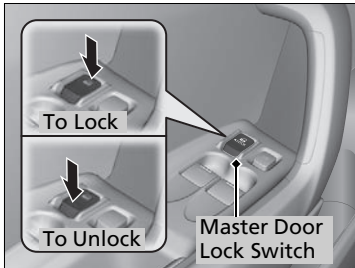
When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, the other door and hatch lock at the same time.

When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

☞ Unlocking Using the Inner Handle of Doors

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock both doors and the hatch.

☒ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the doors and hatch lock/unlock at the same time.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks all doors and unlocks the driver's door automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

The auto door lock function automatically locks all the doors and hatch when the vehicle reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h).

■ Auto Door Unlocking

■ Driver's door open mode

All doors unlock when the driver's door is opened.

☒ Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the multi-information display.

☒ **Customized Features** P. 98

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Hatch

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the hatch before opening or closing it.

■ Opening the hatch

- Open the hatch all the way.
 - ▶ If it is not fully opened, the hatch may come down accidentally by its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the hatch to close.

■ Closing the hatch

Keep the hatch closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.
- ▶ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 66

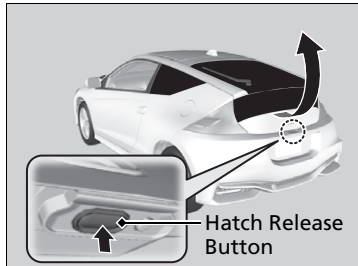
⊠ Precautions for Opening/Closing the Hatch

Be careful not to hit your head on the hatch or to put your hands between the hatch and the cargo area when closing the hatch.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the cargo area while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the cargo space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

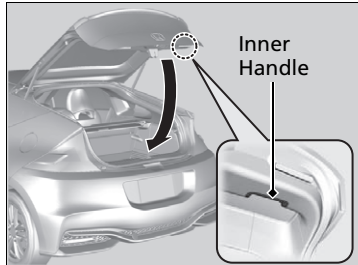
Opening/Closing the Hatch



Push up the hatch release button on the hatch after the doors are unlocked.

Even if the hatch is locked, you can open the hatch if you carry the smart entry remote.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash two times and the beeper sounds.



To close the hatch, grab the inner handle, pull the hatch down, and push it closed from outside.

Opening/Closing the Hatch

When the driver's door is locked, the hatch will lock when it is closed.

Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the hatch release button for approximately one second to unlock the hatch.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice.

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the hatch, hood or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not go off if the hatch or doors are opened with the key, remote transmitter or smart entry system.

However, the alarm goes off when a door is opened with the key, then the shift lever is moved out of **P**(Continuously variable transmission models) or the hood is opened before the power mode is set to ON.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and all of the exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the key or remote transmitter or the power mode is set to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

☞ Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.

Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

☞ Security System Alarm

The security alarm continues for a maximum of two minutes until the security system alarm deactivates.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The hood is closed.
- Both doors and the hatch are locked with the key or the remote transmitter, or smart entry system.

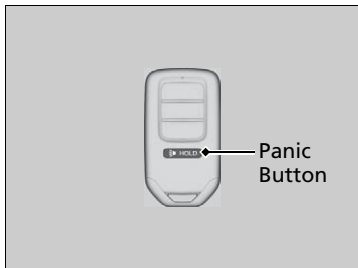
■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks. When the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds, the security system alarm is set.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is canceled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key or remote transmitter, or the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time or the power mode is set to ON.

■ Panic Mode



■ The panic button on the remote transmitter

If you press the panic button for approximately one second, the following will occur for about 30 seconds:

- The horn sounds.
- Some exterior lights flash.

■ Canceling panic mode

Press any button on the remote transmitter, or set the power mode to ON.

☒ Security System Alarm

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the hatch with the hatch release.
- Opening the hood with the hood release.
- Moving the shift lever out of **[P]**.

If the 12 volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key or remote transmitter or smart entry system.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors. The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows.

The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passenger is away from the window before closing it.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Opening either door cancels this function.

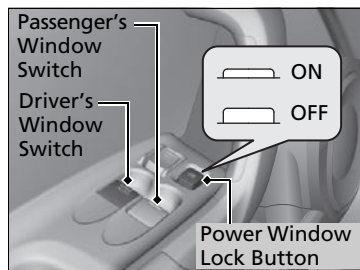
Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

Opening/Closing Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.

To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

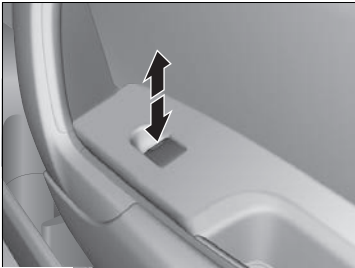
The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function



To open: Push the switch down.

To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

ENGINE START/STOP Button

Changing the Power Mode

Continuously Variable Transmission

Indicator



VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)

Indicator in the button is off. The steering wheel is locked*1. The power to all electrical components is turned off.



ACCESSORY

Indicator in the button is on. Indicator in the button blinks (from ON to ACCESSORY). Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.



ON

Indicator in the button is on. All electrical components can be used.

Without depressing the brake pedal

- Press the button without the shift lever in **P**.
- Shift to **P** then press the button.
- Press the button.
- U.S. models** Shift to **P**.

Manual Transmission

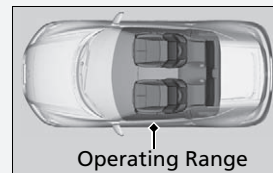
Indicator



Without depressing the clutch pedal

ENGINE START/STOP Button

ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range



You can start the engine when the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle. The engine may also start if the smart entry remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:

Indicator in the button is off, if the engine is running.

If the smart entry remote battery is weak, beeper sounds and the **TO START, HOLD REMOTE NEAR START BUTTON** message appears in the information display.

If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak
P. 364

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

Except U.S. models with continuously Variable Transmission

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

*1:Except U.S. models with continuously Variable Transmission

Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the shift lever in **P***1 and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid the battery drain.

Except U.S. models with continuously Variable Transmission

When in this mode:

The steering wheel does not lock.

You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the smart entry system.

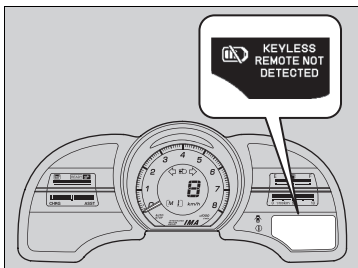
Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

*1: Continuously variable transmission models

■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning buzzer sounds.

■ Smart Entry Remote Reminder



Warning buzzers may sound from inside or/ and outside the vehicle to remind you that the smart entry remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it to be within its operational range.

■ When the power mode is in ON

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, warning buzzers sound from both inside and outside the vehicle. The **KEYLESS REMOTE NOT DETECTED** message on the multi-information display notifies the driver inside that the remote is out.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

Smart Entry Remote Reminder

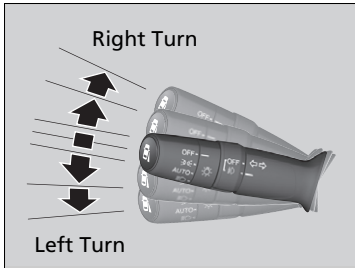
When the smart entry remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the smart entry remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put a smart entry remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the smart entry remote is within the system's operational range.

Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

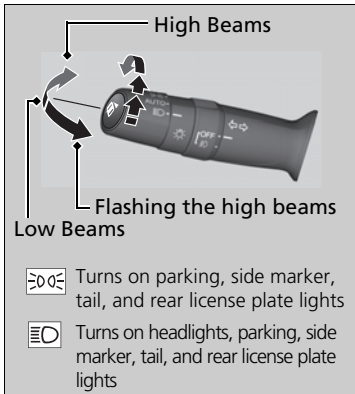
■ One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times.

This feature can be used when signaling for a lane change.

Light Switches

■ Manual Operation



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting.

■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

⊗ Light Switches

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

Models with high voltage discharge tube bulbs

Repeatedly turning the headlights on and off reduces the life of the HID headlight bulbs.

If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

■ Lights off

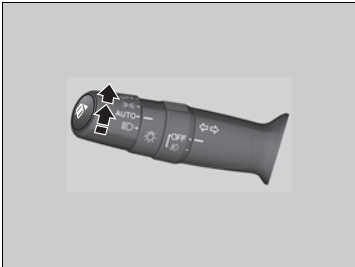
Turn the lever to OFF either when:

- The shift lever is in **P**. (Continuously Variable Transmission models)
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to OFF to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The shift lever is moved out of **P**. (Continuously Variable Transmission models)
- The parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

Automatic Lighting Control*



Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

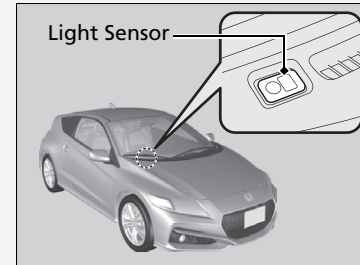
When you turn the light switch to **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

- ▶ You can change the auto light sensitivity setting.
- ▶ **Customized Features** P. 98

Automatic Lighting Control*

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.



Adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at	
MAX		Bright
HIGH		
MID		
LOW		
MIN		Dark

* Not available on all models

■ Headlight Integration with Wipers*

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

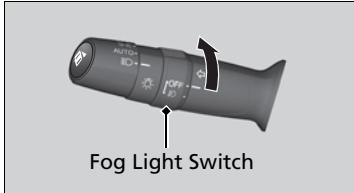
☒ Headlight Integration with Wipers*

This feature activates when the headlights are off in **AUTO**.

The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

When the ambient light is at dark, the automatic lighting control feature overrides, and the headlights come on with or without the wipers sweeping more than several times.

Fog Lights*



When the low beam headlights are on, turn the fog light switch on to use the fog lights.


Daytime Running Lights

Models with halogen headlights

The high beam headlights come on slightly dimmer than normal when the following conditions have been met:

Models with high voltage discharge headlights

The LED daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is off, or in .
- The parking brake is released.

Models with high voltage discharge headlights

- When the headlight switch is in **AUTO**, the light sensor determines it is daytime.

The lights remain on even if you set the parking brake. Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) will turn off the daytime running lights.

Models with halogen headlights

The high beam headlights return to the original brightness once the headlight switch is turned on.

* Not available on all models

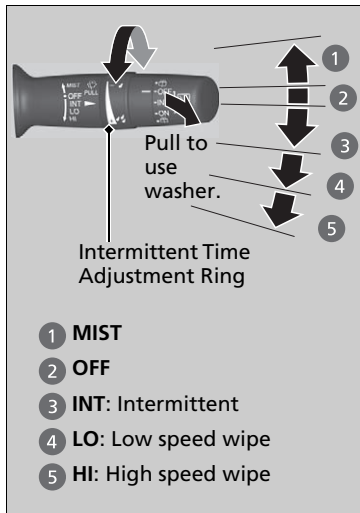
☒ Fog Lights*

When the fog lights are on, the indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

☒ **Indicators** P. 70

Wipers and Washers

■ Windshield Wiper/Washer



The windshield wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, LO, HI)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Adjusting wiper operation

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust wiper operation.



Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windshield, then stop.

▶▶ Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windshield is dry. The windshield will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

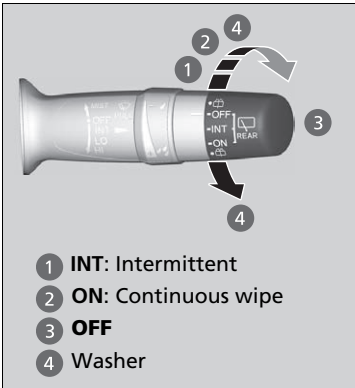
NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windshield, becoming stuck. Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the defroster to warm the windshield, then turn the wipers on.

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens. When the vehicle starts moving, the wipers make a single sweep. When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting (🔊) and the LO setting become the same.

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

Rear Wiper/Washer



The rear wiper and washer can be used when the power mode is in ON.

Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

The wiper operates intermittently after completing a few sweeps.

Washer

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.

Hold it to activate the wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, it stops operating after a few more sweeps.

Operating in reverse

When you shift the transmission to **R** with the front wiper activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
INT (Intermittent)	Intermittent
LO (Low speed wipe)	Continuous
HI (High speed wipe)	

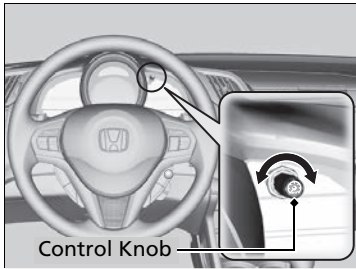
Rear Wiper/Washer

If the wiper stops operating due to any obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.

Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then remove the obstacle.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

Brightness Control



When the power mode is in ON, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.

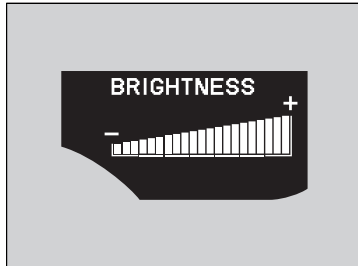
Brighten: Turn the knob to the right.

Dim: Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beeper when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. The multi-information display will return to its original state several seconds after you adjust the brightness.


■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the multi-information display while you are adjusting it.



▶▶ Brightness Control

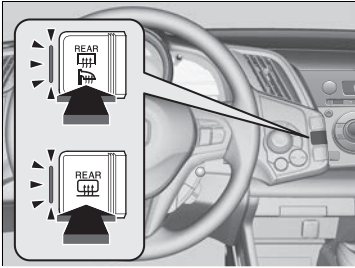
Instrument panel brightness varies, depending on whether the exterior lights are on or off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when they are on.

Pressing either   /  (information) button changes to a different display.

If you turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds. This cancels the reduced instrument panel brightness when the parking lights are on.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror * Button



Press the rear defogger and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

The rear defogger and heated door mirrors automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below, they do not automatically switch off.

⊠ Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror * Button

NOTICE

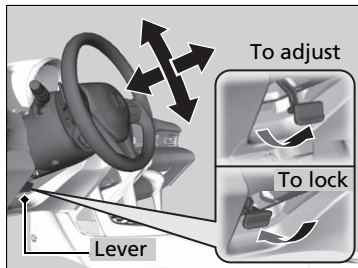
When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to damage the heating wires. It is critical to wipe the window from side to side along the defogger heating wires.

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged. Also, do not use the system for a long period when the engine is idling. This may weaken the 12 volt battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
 - The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
 - Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
 - After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

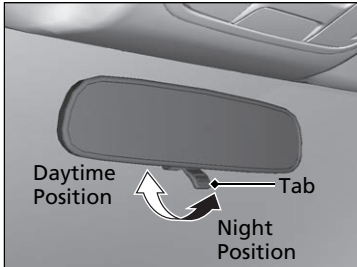
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Make any steering wheel adjustments before you start driving.

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions



Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

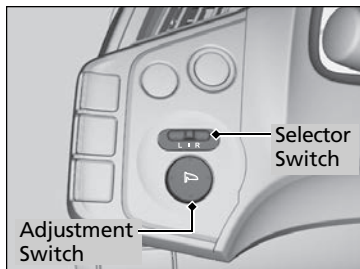
Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

➤ **Adjusting the Seat Positions** P. 141

Power Door Mirrors



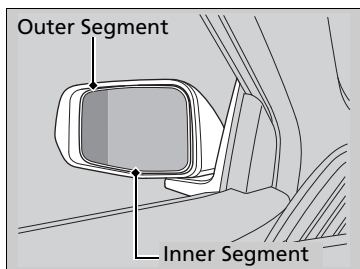
You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ Mirror position adjustment

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the center position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ Expanded View Driver's Mirror



The driver side door mirror has outer and inner segments.

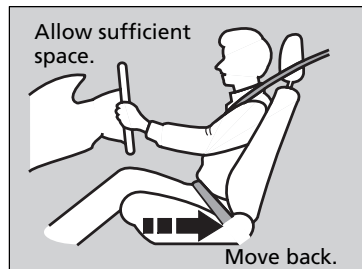
The outer segment is slightly curved to provide a wider angle view than a standard flat mirror. This wider view may help you check areas that are not visible using a standard door mirror.

▶▶ Expanded View Driver's Mirror

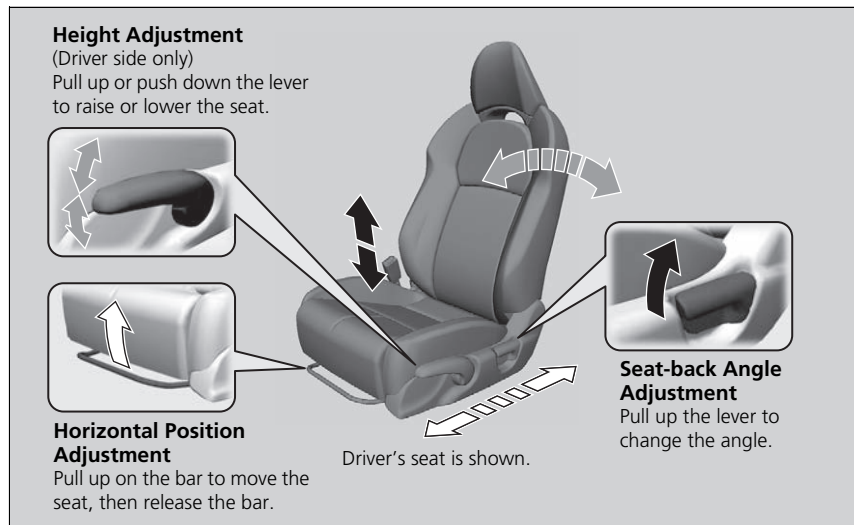
Objects visible in the outer segment of the driver side door mirror appears smaller than objects in the rest of the mirror. But in fact, they are closer than they appear.

Do not rely on your mirrors. Always look to the side and behind your vehicle before changing lanes.

Adjusting the Seat Positions



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.



Adjusting the Seats

⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

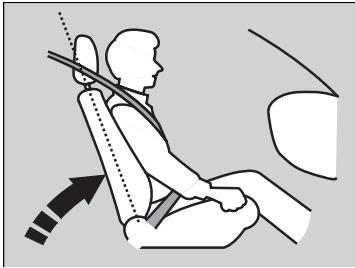
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

The passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

▶▶ Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠ WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

■ Head Restraints

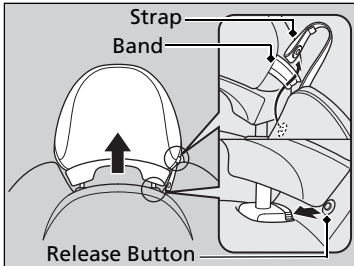
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in both seating positions. However, they are non-adjustable.

Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries.

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove the head restraint:



1. Unhook the strap on the outside edge of the seat-back.
2. Pull out the strap throughout the band on the outside under edge of the head restraint.
3. Push the release button, and pull the head restraint upward.

✘ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

⚠ WARNING

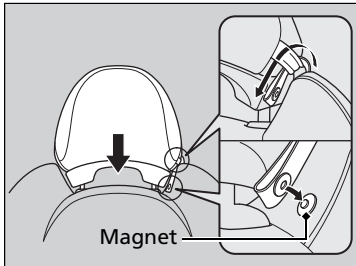
Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

The driver's and passenger's seats have active head restraints.

➤ **Active Head Restraints** P. 145

To install the head restraint:



1. Put the legs back in place, then slightly lower it.
 - Do not push it down fully until it locks in place.
2. Insert the strap onto the band, then hook it to the magnet on the outside edge of the seat-back.
3. Push the head restraint down until it locks. Make sure the head restraint locks in place when you reinstall it.

■ Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

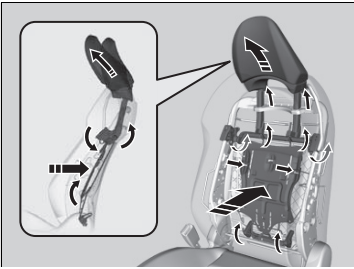
►► Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

⚠ WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Active Head Restraints



The driver's and passenger's seats have active head restraints. In a rear impact, an occupant properly secured by a seat belt will be pushed against the seat-back and the head restraint will move forward. This reduces the distance between the restraint and the occupant's head, which helps reduce the likelihood of whiplash and injuries to the neck and upper spine.

Active Head Restraints

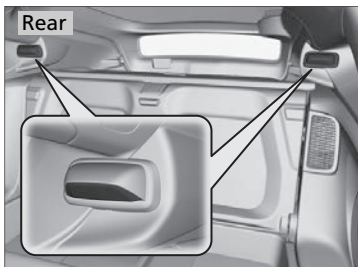
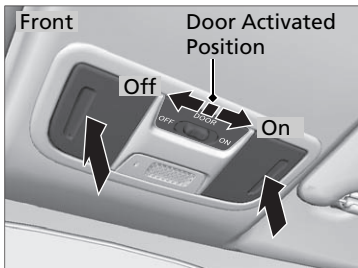
In order for the active head restraints to operate properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

After collision, the activated restraint should return to its normal position. If the restraint does not return to its normal position, or in the event of a severe collision, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches



■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When either of the doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Each front interior light can be used as a map light. Each light can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights go off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
 - When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.
- You can change the interior light dimming time.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 98

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

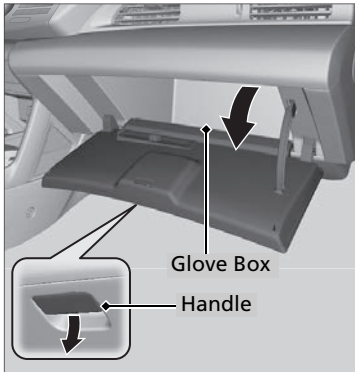
- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

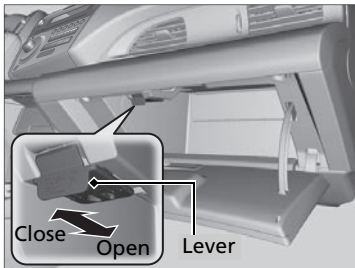
When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and either door is open, the front interior light will not go off when you press the lens.

Interior Convenience Items



Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.



You can keep beverage bottles and cans cool with the air conditioning system.

1. Push the lever forward to open the air vent in the glove box.
2. Turn on the climate control system and adjust the temperature to cool.
3. Set the mode control  or .
 - The cool air is diverted through the air vent.

Glove Box

⚠ WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

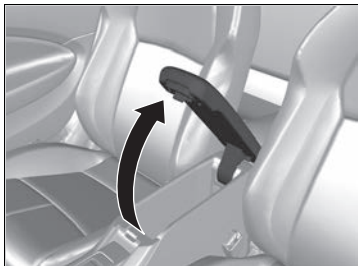
Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Use only resealable containers or keep unopened cans in the glove box.

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery and electrical components in the glove box and inside the dashboard.

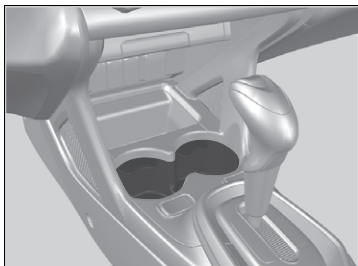
When the heater begins to divert warm air, the airflow into the glove box is shut off.

■ Console Compartment



Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

■ Beverage Holders



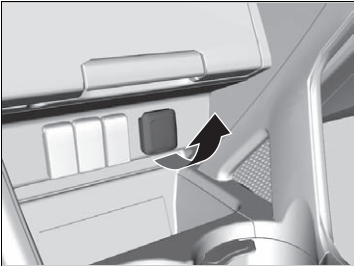
» Beverage Holders

NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

■ Accessory Power Socket



The accessory power socket can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.

Open the cover to use it.

▣ Accessory Power Socket

NOTICE

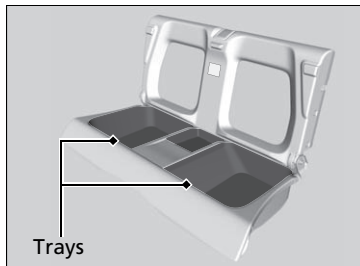
Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element.

This can overheat the power socket.

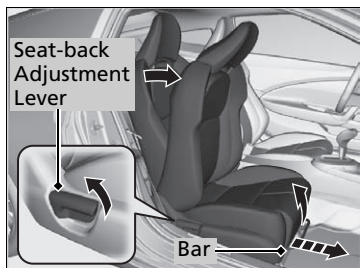
The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts or less (15 amps).

To prevent 12 volt battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.

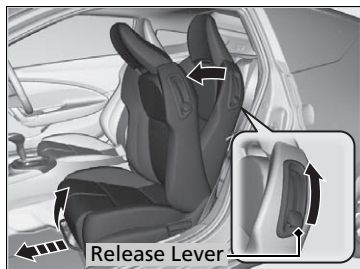
■ Rear Cargo Console



Rear trays to store small items are located on the rear cargo console.



To access the rear cargo console, open the door, slide the seat by pulling up on the bar, then pull up on the seat-back adjustment lever.



■ Driver side

Pulling up on the release lever on the side of the seat-back tilts the seat-back forward.

►► Rear Cargo Console

⚠ WARNING

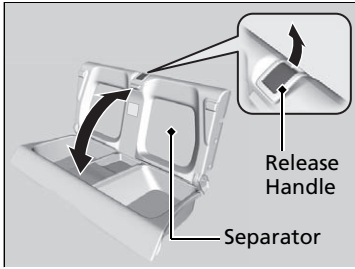
This vehicle is not equipped with rear seats or seatbelts.

Sitting in this area may result in injury or death, and may violate state laws.

Only the driver and one front seat passenger may be safely seated in this vehicle.

Make sure all items on the rear trays are secured. They could be thrown around and cause injury during a crash.

To return the separator upright, push it backwards until it locks.



■ Separator

Folding down the separator will create more cargo area.

1. Remove any items from the rear trays.
2. Pull up the release handle on the top of the separator.

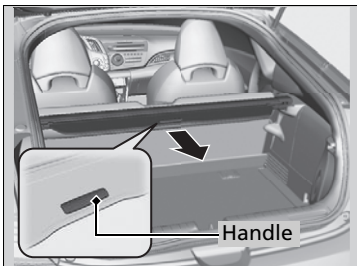
▣ Rear Cargo Console

Make sure that the folded separator does not press against the passenger seat, as this could cause the weight sensors to work improperly.

▣ **Side Airbag Off Indicator** P. 52

Make sure all items in the cargo area are secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

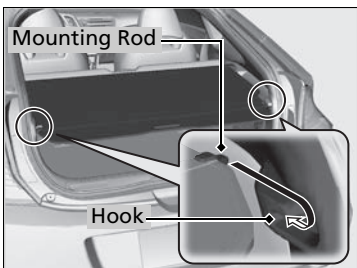
■ Cargo Cover



The cargo cover can be used to conceal your parcels and protect them from direct sunlight.

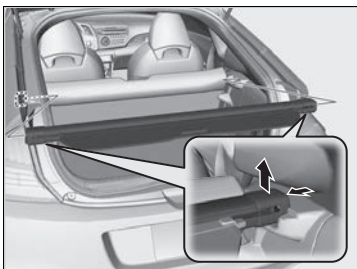
■ To extend:

Pull the handle on the center edge, then clip the mounting rods in the hooks on both sides of the hatch opening.



■ To retract:

Slip the rods out of the hooks, then slowly roll it back until it is completely retracted.



■ To remove:

Push either end of the housing inward, then lift it out of its position.

☒ Cargo Cover

Do not access parcels in the cargo area while driving. This may cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Do not stack objects higher than the top of the seat in the cargo area. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a sudden stop.

To prevent cargo cover damage:

- Do not place items on the cargo cover.
- Do not put weight on the cargo cover.



■ **To store:**

The housing unit can be stored on the cargo area floor to make more space available.

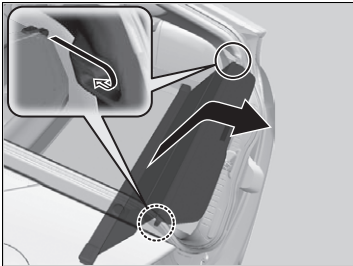
Push one end of the unit into the hole on one side panel, then insert the other end into the hole on the other side.

After storing the unit, rock it up and down to make sure it is securely placed.

Reverse this procedure to install the housing unit in place.

■ **To separate the cargo area into two:**

1. Pull out the cargo cover from its housing while it is stored on the cargo area floor.
2. Clip the mounting rods in the hooks at both sides of the hatch opening.

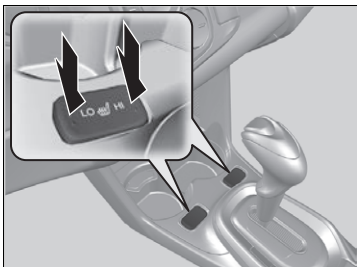


■ Seat Heaters*



The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters. The **HI** setting heats the seats faster than the **LO** setting.

There is no heater in the passenger's seat-back due to the side airbag cutoff system.



While in **HI**, the heater cycles on and off.

- ▶ The appropriate indicator will be on while the seat heater is on. Briefly press the switch on the opposite side to turn the heater off. The indicator will be off. When a comfortable temperature is reached, select **LO** to keep the seat warm.

▶▶ Seat Heaters*

⚠ WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

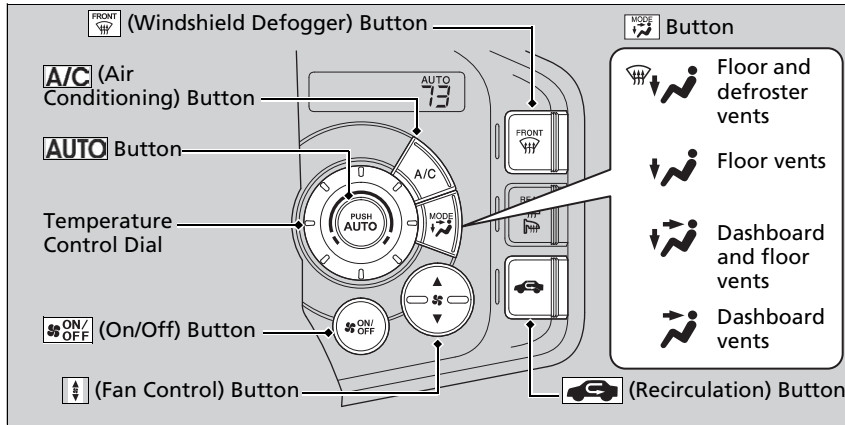
Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in **LO** when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

In the **LO** setting, the heater runs continuously and does not automatically turn off.

Using Automatic Climate Control


The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** button to cancel.

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the  button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation Mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh Air Mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

☒ Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in **AUTO**, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

During the Auto Idle Stop, the air conditioning system will be turned off.

If the ECON mode is selected, the fan may also be turned off.

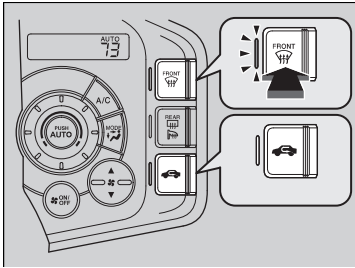
To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.


If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on **AUTO**, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.


When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the **ON/OFF** button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

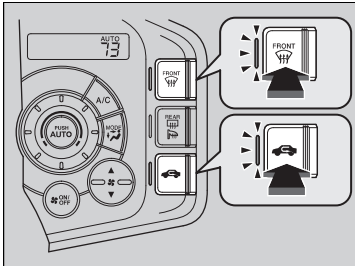
■ Defrosting the Windshield and Windows





Pressing the  button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the  button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows



1. Press the  button.
2. Press the  button (the indicator on).

► Defrosting the Windshield and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.


When cold air hits the windshield, the outside of the windshield may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

► To rapidly defrost the windows


After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Continuously variable transmission models

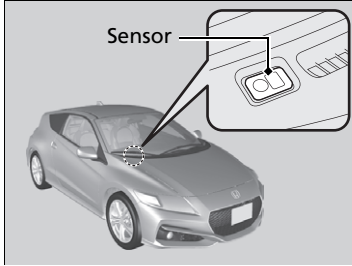
Pressing the  button restarts the engine automatically during the Auto Idle Stop.

Manual transmission models

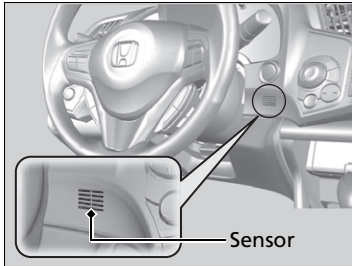
To defog during the Auto Idle Stop, restart the engine as follows.

1. Make sure the shift lever is in **N**.
2. Depress the clutch pedal fully.
3. Press the  button.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

Audio System

About Your Audio System	160
USB Ports	161
HDMI™ Port	162
Audio System Theft Protection	163
Audio Remote Controls	164

Audio System Basic Operation

Audio/Information Screen	168
Adjusting the Sound	173
Display Setup	174
Playing AM/FM Radio	175
Playing a CD	178

Playing Internet Radio	184
Playing a USB Flash Drive	186
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio	189
Playing a Video Using the HDMI™	191
Smartphone Apps	193
Siri® Eyes Free	194

Audio Error Messages

CD Player	195
iPod/USB Flash Drive	196
Pandora®	197

General Information on the Audio

System	199
Recommended CDs	199
Compatible iPod, iPhone and USB Flash Drives	201

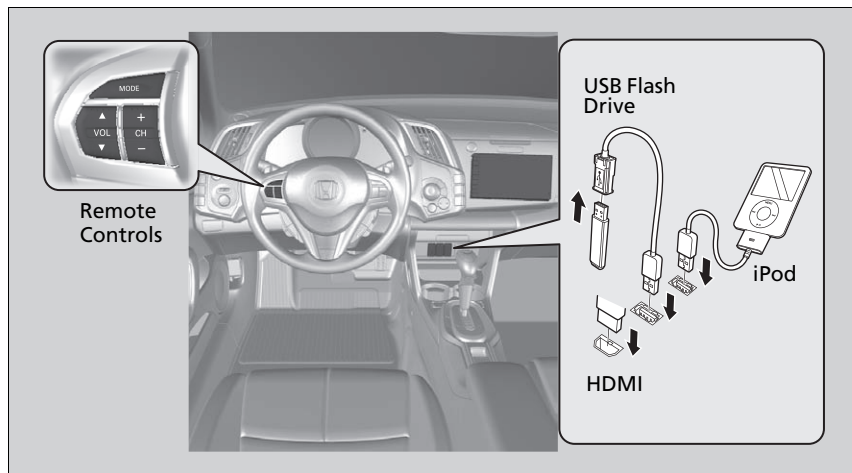
Customized Features

Defaulting All the Settings	212
<i>Bluetooth</i>® HandsFreeLink® Using HFL	213
HFL Menus	215

About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio. It can also play audio CDs, WMA/MP3/AAC files, USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone, and *Bluetooth*[®] devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, or the remote controls on the steering wheel.



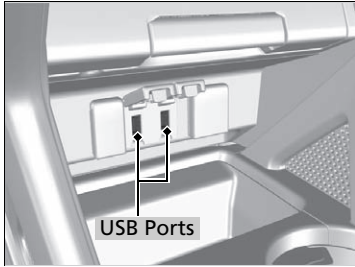
⌘ About Your Audio System

Video CDs, DVDs, and 3-inch (8-cm) mini CDs are not supported.

iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

USB Ports



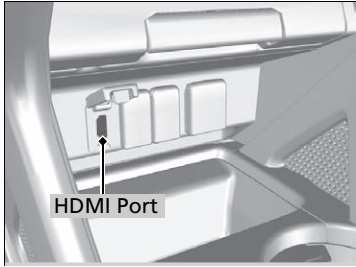
1. Open the cover.
2. Install the iPod dock connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

⌘ USB Ports

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- Do not use an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend keeping your data backed up before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognize the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit www.apple.com/ipod.

HDMI™ Port



1. Open the cover.
2. Install the HDMI™ cable to the HDMI™ port.

⌘ HDMI™ Port

- Do not leave the HDMI™ connected device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend keeping your data backed up before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

Audio System Theft Protection

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display **Enter Code**.

■ Reactivating the audio system

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
 - ▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognize the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

▣ Audio System Theft Protection

U.S. models

Find the audio system's security code and serial number label in your owner's manual kit.

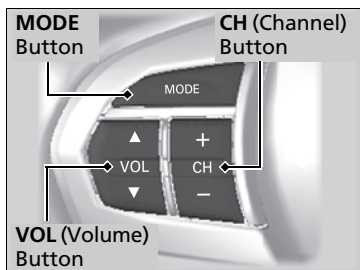
We recommend that you write down the serial number in this owner's manual.

Do not store the label in your vehicle. If you lose the label, you must first retrieve the serial number, and then obtain the code.

You can find out about your serial number and security code from a dealer.

Audio Remote Controls

Allows you to operate the audio system while driving.



MODE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:
 FM→AM→CD→USB→iPod→Pandora®*1→
 Apps→Bluetooth® Audio→AUX HDMI™

VOL Button

Press ▲ : To increase the volume.

Press ▼ : To decrease the volume.

CH Button

- When listening to the radio
 - Press + : To select the next preset radio station.
 - Press - : To select the previous preset radio station.
 - Press and hold + : To select the next strong station.
 - Press and hold - : To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to a CD, iPod, USB flash drive, or Bluetooth® Audio
 - Press + : To skip to the next song.
 - Press - : To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a CD (MP3/WMA/AAC), USB flash drive, or Bluetooth® Audio
 - Press and hold + : To skip to the next folder.
 - Press and hold - : To go back to the previous folder.

*1: U.S. models only

Audio Remote Controls


Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the Bluetooth® device you connect, some functions may not be operated.


U.S. models

Compatible phones only

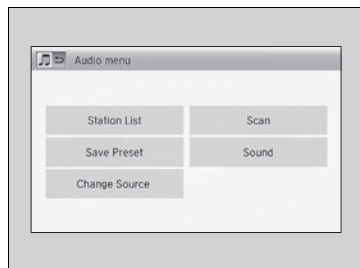
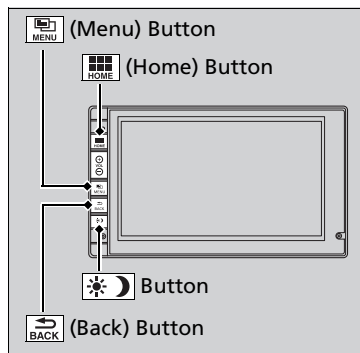
- When listening to Pandora®


Press  : To skip to the next song.

Press and hold  : To select the next station.

Press and hold  : To select the previous station.

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.





 **(Home) button:** Press to go to the home screen.




➤ **Switching the Display** P. 168


 **(Menu) button:** Press to select any mode.

The available mode includes **Change Source**, **Station List**, **Save Preset**, **View Radio Text**, **Music Search**, **Sound**, and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from **Scan**, **Random/Repeat**, and so on.

 **(Back) button:** Press to go back to the previous display when it is displayed.

 **button:** Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press  once and select  or  to make an adjustment.

▶ Each time you press , the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and **OFF** mode.

Audio System Basic Operation

Audio Menu Items

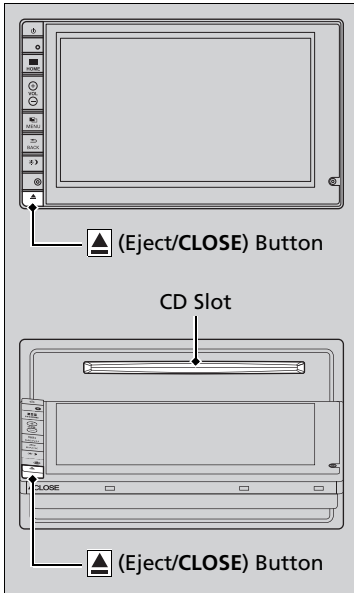
➤ **Station List** P. 177

➤ **Music Search** P. 179, 182, 187, 190

➤ **Random/Repeat** P. 180, 188

➤ **Scan** P. 177, 180, 188

■ How to access the disc slot



Press the  (Eject/**CLOSE**) button to open the screen.

▶ The screen folds back, and the CD slot appears.

Press the  (Eject/**CLOSE**) button to return the screen to the upright position.

☒ How to access the disc slot

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

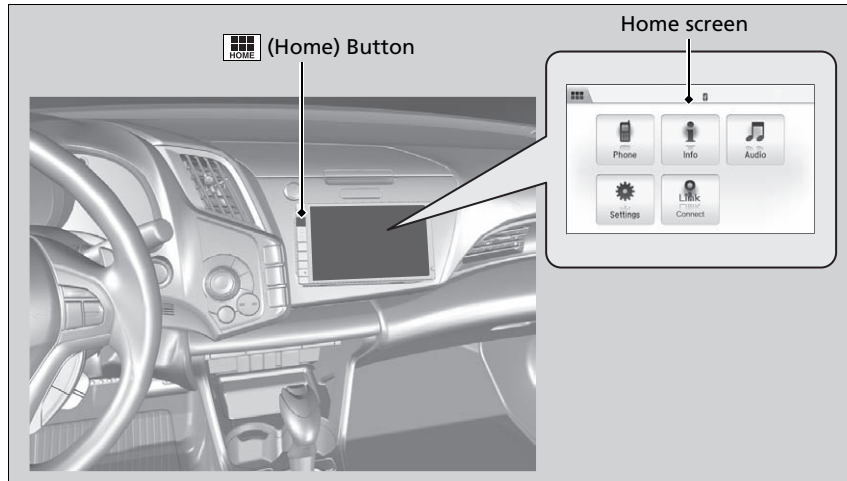
Do not use the folded down screen as a tray.


You cannot open the screen when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

■ Switching the Display




Press the  button to go to the home screen.
Select **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, or **Connect**.

■ Phone

Shows the HFL information.

➔ **Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®** P. 213

■ Info

Displays **Trip Computer** or **Clock/Wallpaper**. To see all available information, **Trip Computer**, **Voice Info**, **Clock/Wallpaper**, or **System/Device Information**, press the  button.

■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 202

■ Connect

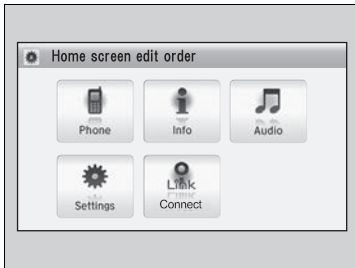
Connects with your smartphone*1 to play personalized music, information, and social media streams.


➤ **Smartphone Apps** P. 193

*1: Available on specific phones only. Check handsfreelink.honda.com for compatible phones and hondalink.com for feature details.

Continued

■ Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout



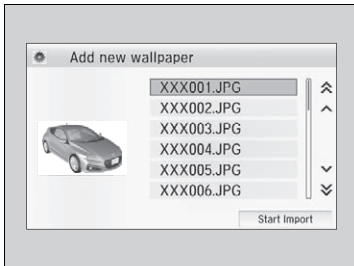
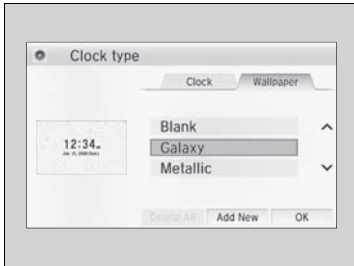
1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings** to go to the settings screen.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Home** tab.
5. Select **Home Screen Edit Order**.
6. Select and hold the icon then, drag it to the desired position.

Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
 ▶ **USB Ports** P. 161
2. Select **Settings** to go to the settings screen.
3. Select **Clock/Info**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then the **Wallpaper** tab.
5. Select **Add New**.
 ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Select a desired picture.
 ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.
 ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 x 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 420 x 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

Continued

■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Settings** to go to the settings screen.
2. Select **Clock/Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then the **Wallpaper** tab.
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Set**.
 - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

■ To view wallpaper once it is set

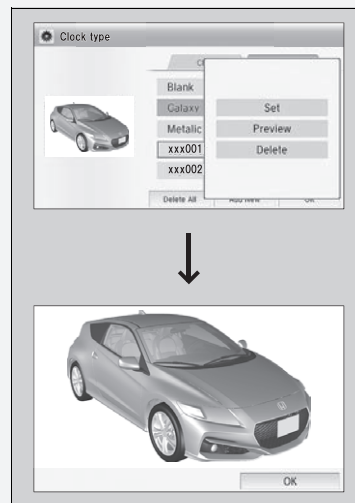
1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Info**.
3. Press the  button.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper**.


■ Delete wallpaper

1. Select **Settings** to go to the settings screen.
2. Select **Clock/Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then the **Wallpaper** tab.
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Delete**.
 - ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
6. Select **Yes** to delete completely.
 - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.

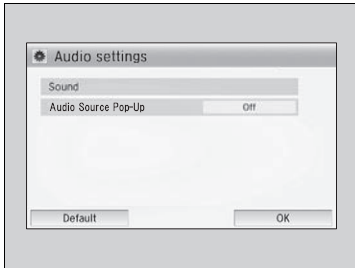


To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or press the  (Back) button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

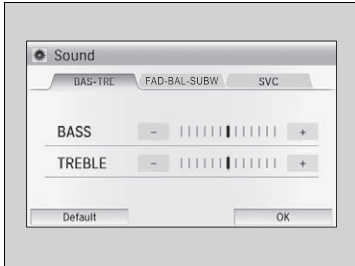
To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**.

Adjusting the Sound



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **Sound**.

Select the tabs to adjust the following choices:
BASS, TREBLE, FADER, BALANCE, Subwoofer*, **Speed Volume Compensation (SVC)**



Adjusting the Sound

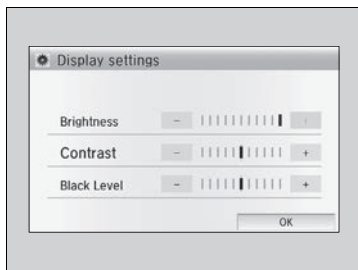
The SVC has four modes: **Off, Low, Mid, and High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.


* Not available on all models

Display Setup

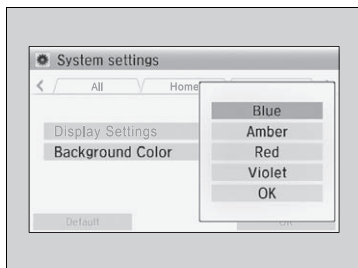
You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information screen.


■ Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings** to go to the settings screen.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Display Settings**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

■ Changing the Screen's Color Theme

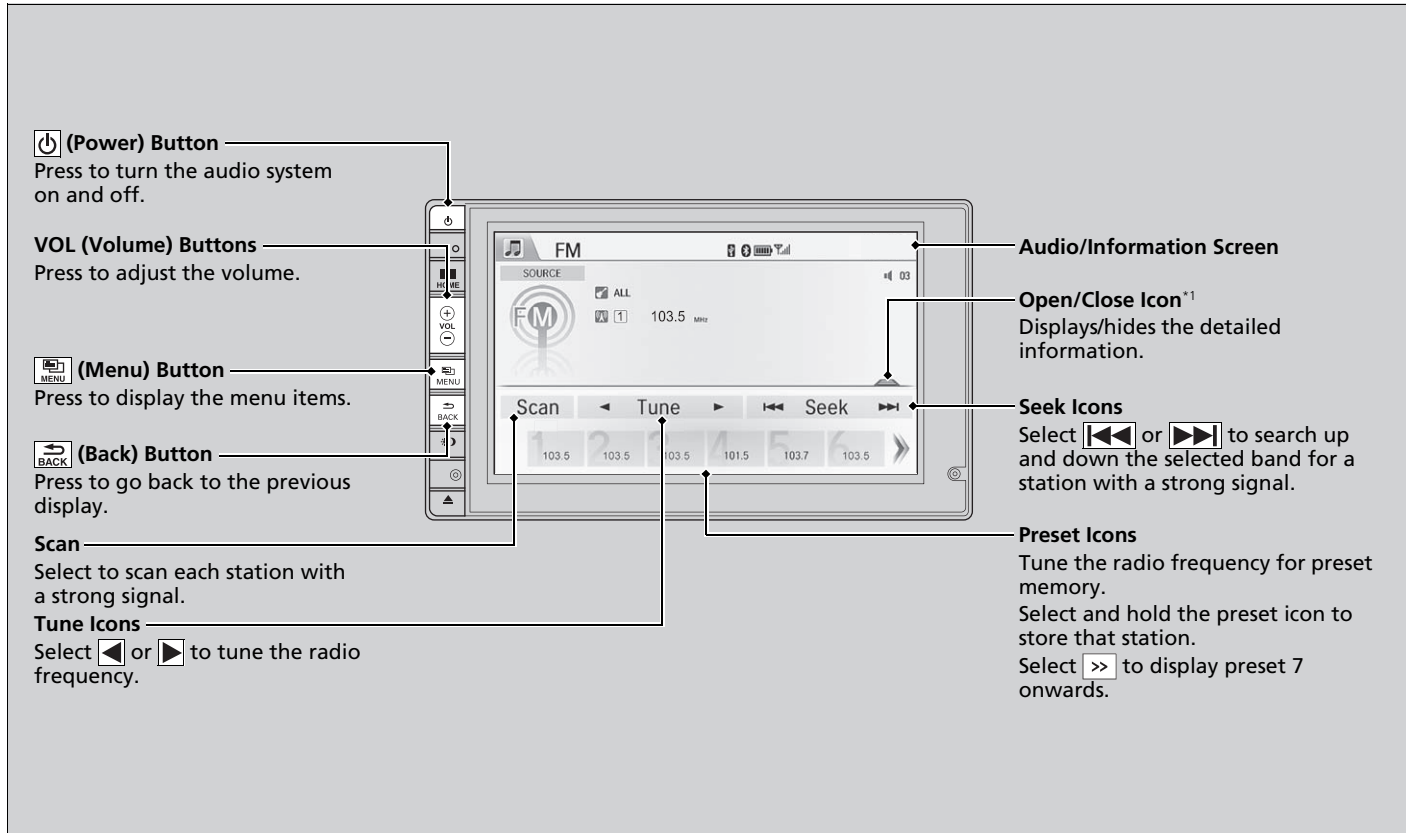


1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings** to go to the settings screen.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Background Color**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

☒ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.


Playing AM/FM Radio



*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

■ Preset Memory

To store a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Press the  button.
3. Select **Save Preset**.
4. Select the preset number for the station you want to store.

You can also store a preset station by the following procedure.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a channel list.
2. Select the **Preset** tab.
3. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store until you hear a beep.


■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Station List**.
3. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Station List**.
3. Select **Refresh**.

▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode


Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the list.

 **Audio Remote Controls** P. 164

You can also switch the mode by selecting **Change Source** on the **Audio menu** screen.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory.


■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or .

■ Radio Data System (RDS)


Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Press the  button while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Station List**.
3. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press the  button while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Station List**.
3. Select **Refresh**.

■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **View Radio Text**.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Scan**.

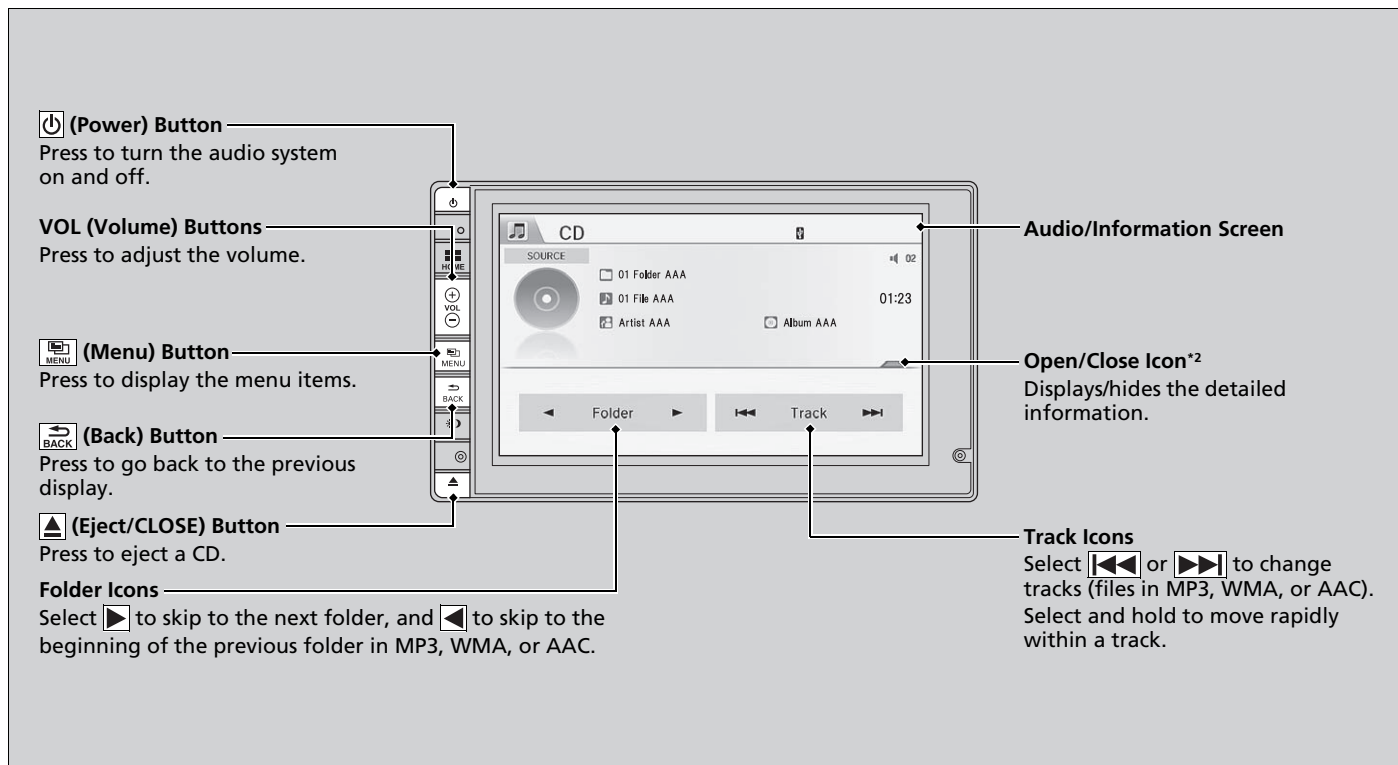
To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or .

☒ Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Playing a CD

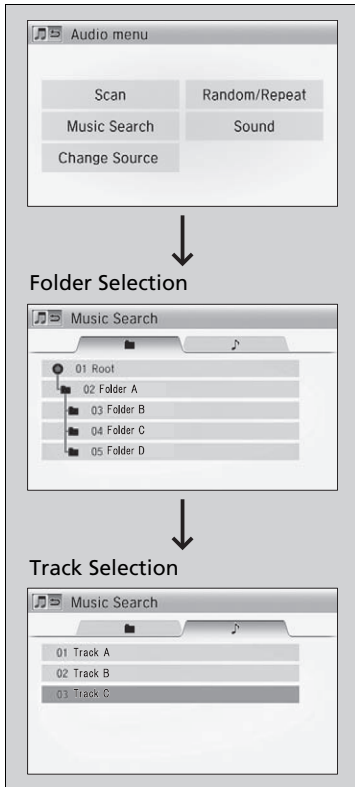
Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs, and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format. With the CD loaded, select the CD mode.




*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

*2: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Press the  button and select **Music Search**.

2. Select a folder.

3. Select a track.

▶▶ Playing a CD

NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.



1. Press the button.
2. Select **Scan** or **Random/Repeat**.
3. Select a mode.

■ To turn off a play mode

1. Press the button.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folders (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

Random/Repeat

Repeat Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat Track: Repeats the current track/file.

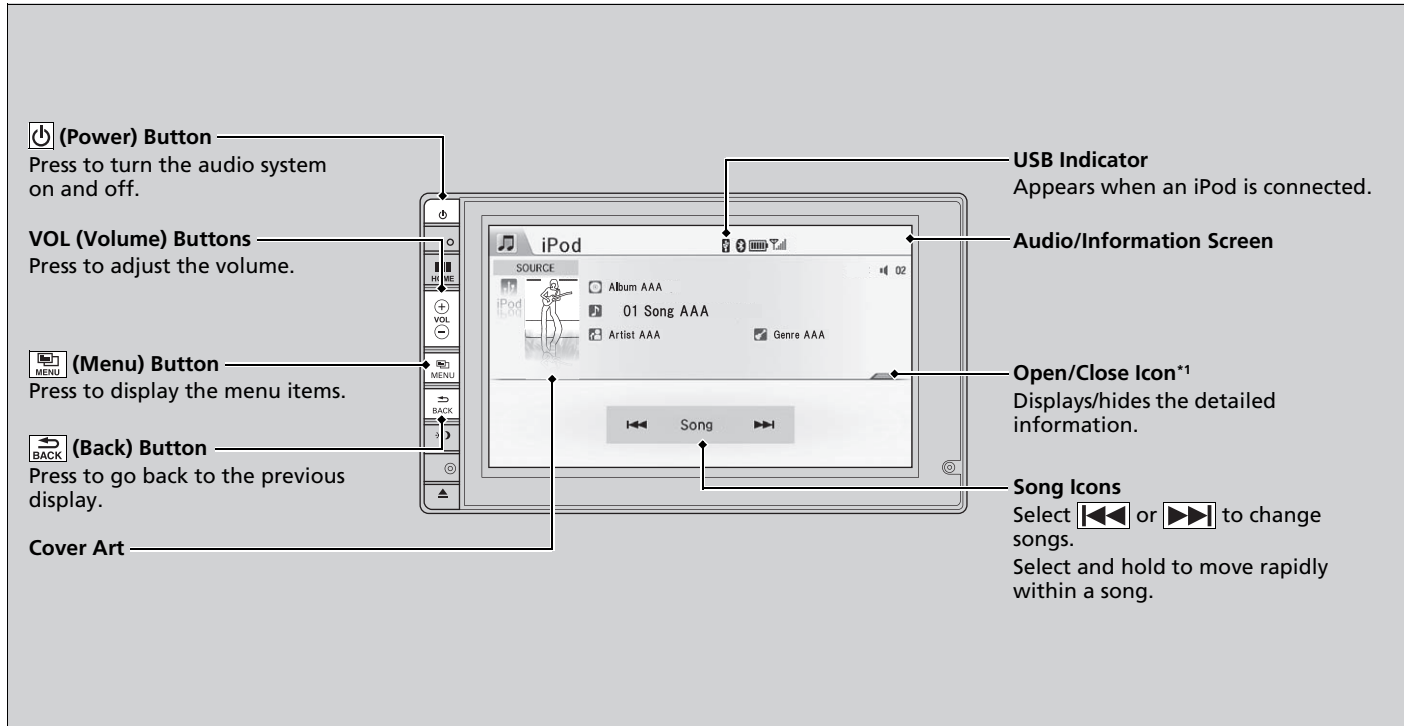
Random in Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All Tracks: Plays all tracks/files in random order.

Playing an iPod

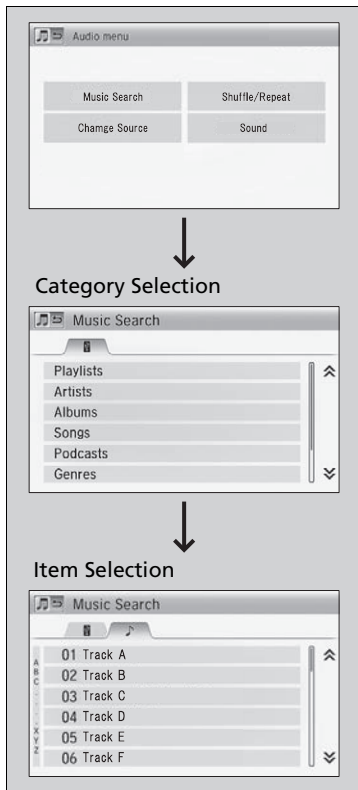
Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.


➤ **USB Ports** P. 161



*1: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Press the  button and select **Music Search**.

2. Select the items on that menu.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

Functions may vary by model or version. Some audio system functions may not be available.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

 **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 196

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the Display Audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the Display Audio system. Reconnect the device if necessary.

iPod will only play through the USB cable, you cannot play the iPod through the HondaLink® Cable.


How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a file.



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Shuffle/Repeat**.
3. Select a mode.

To turn off a play mode

1. Press the  button.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Repeat Song: Repeats the current file.

Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

U.S. models

Compatible phones only

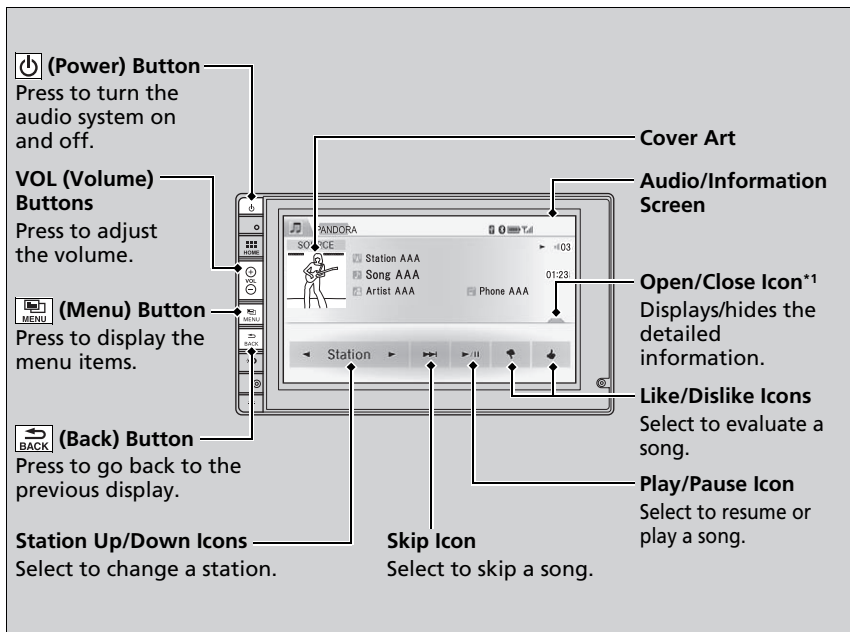
Playing Internet Radio

Connect a compatible phone through *Bluetooth*®.

➔ **Phone Setup** P. 220

iPhone only

You can also connect the phone using your dock connector to the USB port. Select **SOURCE** to select Pandora® mode.



*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

▶▶ Playing Internet Radio

Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission. Pandora is currently available exclusively in the United States.

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, visit www.handsfreelink.honda.com, or call 1-888-528-7876.

To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit www.pandora.com for more information.

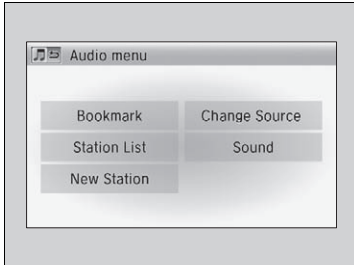
Pandora® on the iPhone will only play through the USB cable or *Bluetooth*® Audio, you cannot play Pandora® through the HondaLink® Cable.

■ Pandora® Menu

You can operate some of the Pandora® menu items from your vehicle's audio system. The available items are:

- **Bookmark**
- **Station List**
- **New Station**
- **Change Source**
- **Sound**

■ Operating a menu item



1. Press the  button.
2. Select an item.

▶▶ Playing Internet Radio

Pandora® is free, personalized radio that plays music and comedy you'll love. Just start with the name of one of your favorite artists, songs, comedians or composers and Pandora® will create a custom station that plays similar tracks. Pandora® also features hundreds of genre stations ranging from Dubstep to Smooth Jazz to Power Workout.

If you cannot operate Pandora® through the audio system, it may be streaming through *Bluetooth®* Audio. Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

▶▶ Changing Stations

To change stations, activate the Pandora® menu, select **Station List**, and then select a new station.

▶▶ Pandora® Menu

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶▶ **Pandora®** P. 197

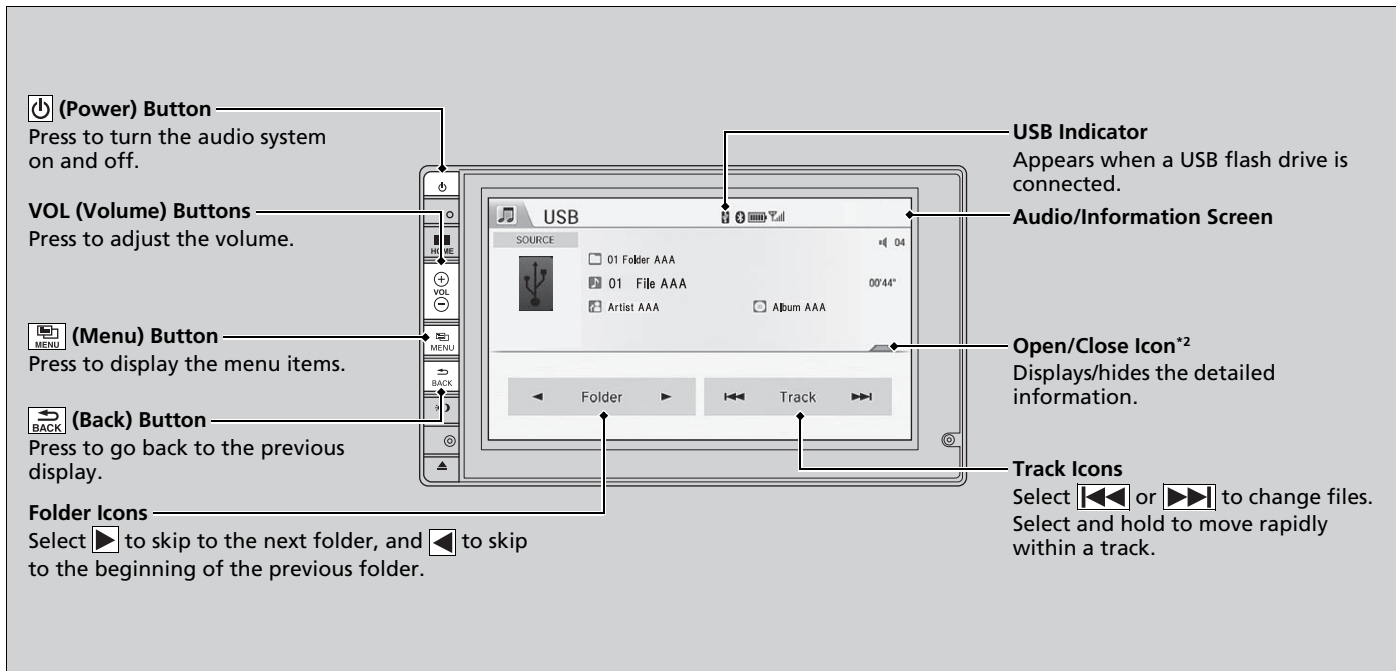
Pandora® may limit the total number of skips allowed on the service. If you dislike a track after the skip limit has been reached, your feedback will be saved but the current track will continue to play.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays audio files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC*1 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

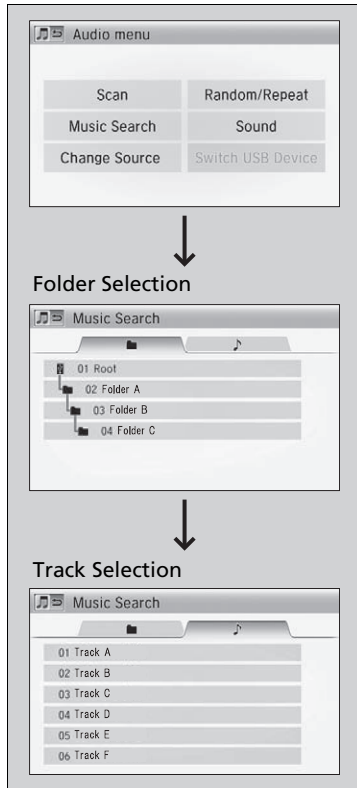
➤ **USB Ports** P. 161




*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

*2: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

How to Select a File from the Music Research List



1. Press the  button and select **Music Search**.

2. Select a folder.

3. Select a track.

▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use a recommended USB flash drive.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**
P. 199

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

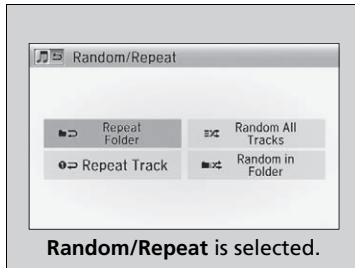
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 196


■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Scan** or **Random/Repeat**.
3. Select a mode.

■ To turn off a play mode

1. Press the  button.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

Random/Repeat

Repeat Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat Track: Repeats the current file.

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

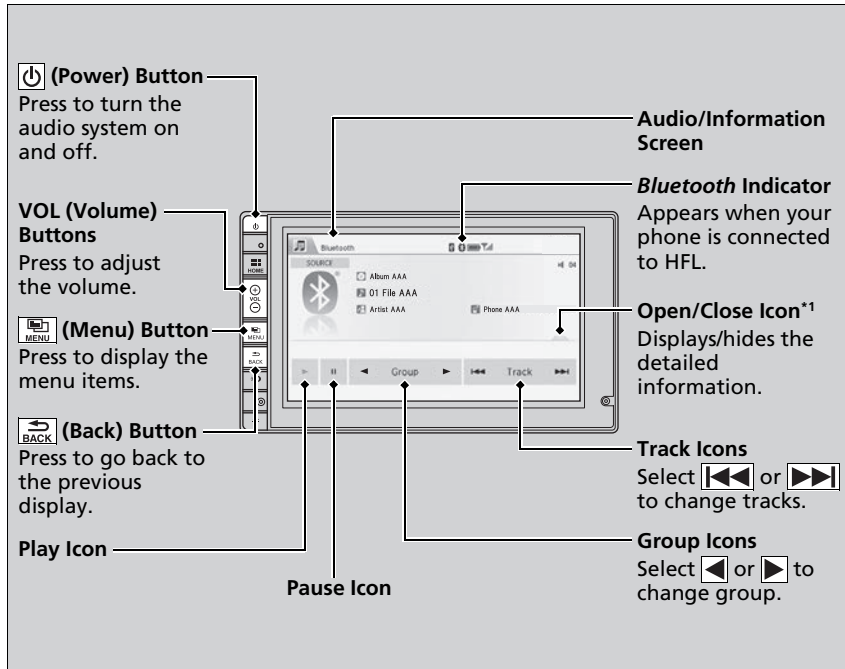
Random All Tracks: Plays all files in random order.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

📱 **Phone Setup** P. 220



* 1: Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system.

For a list of compatible phones:

- U.S.: Visit www.handsfreelink.honda.com, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: Visit www.handsfreelink.ca, or call 1-888-528-7876.

In some states, it may be illegal to operate devices that use data while driving.

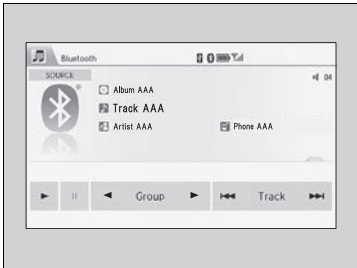
Only one phone can be used with HFL at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



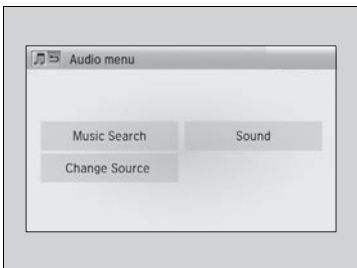
1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFL.
2. Press the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.


If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ To resume or pause a file

Select the play icon or pause icon, respectively.

■ Searching for Music



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Music Search**.
3. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
4. Select an item.
 - ▶ The selection begins playing.

▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

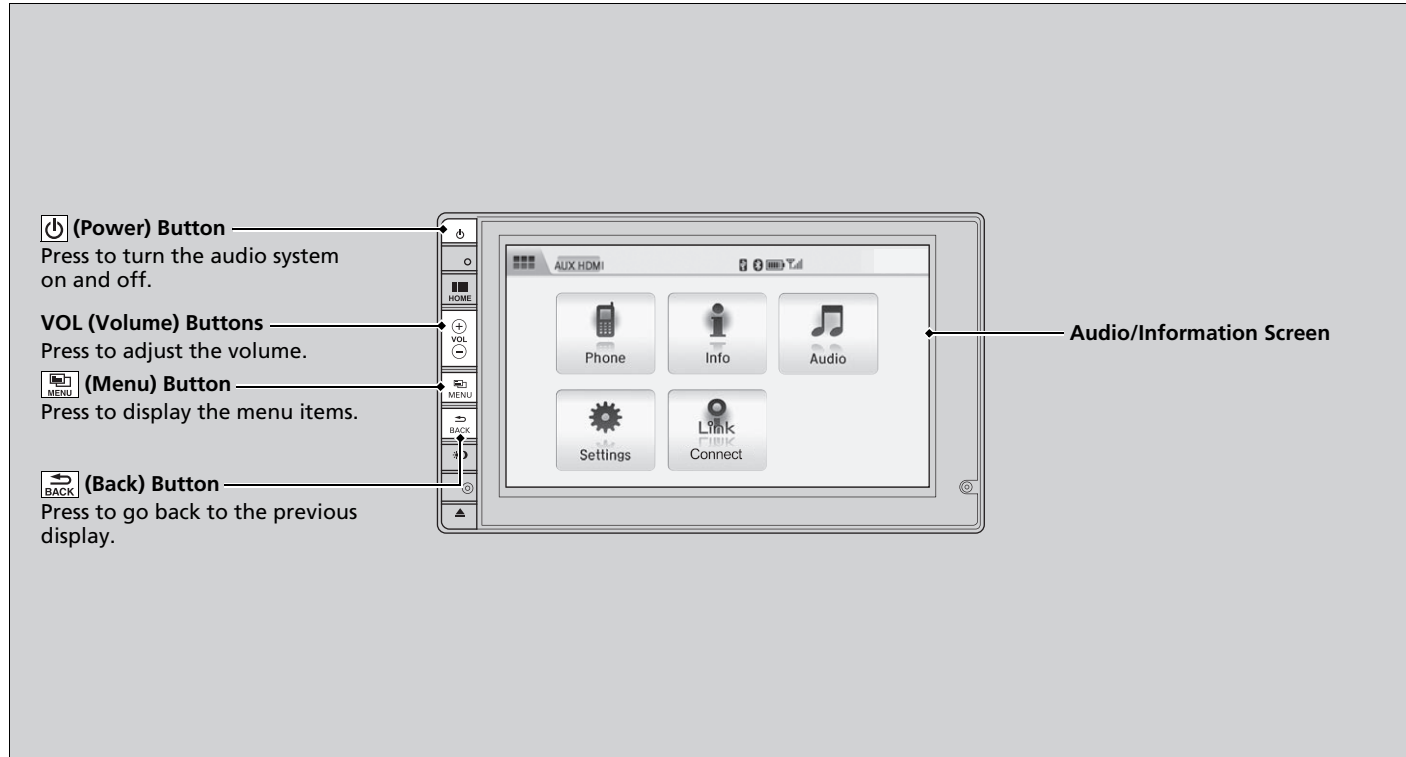
▶▶ Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

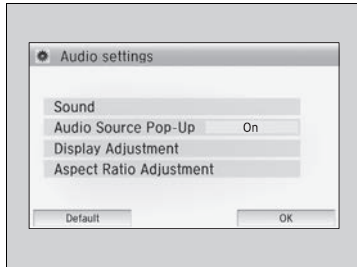
Playing a Video Using the HDMI™


Your audio system allows you to play videos from an HDMI-compatible device. Connect the device, using an HDMI™ cable, then select the HDMI™ mode.

▶ **HDMI™ Port** P. 162



■ Changing the Screen Aspect



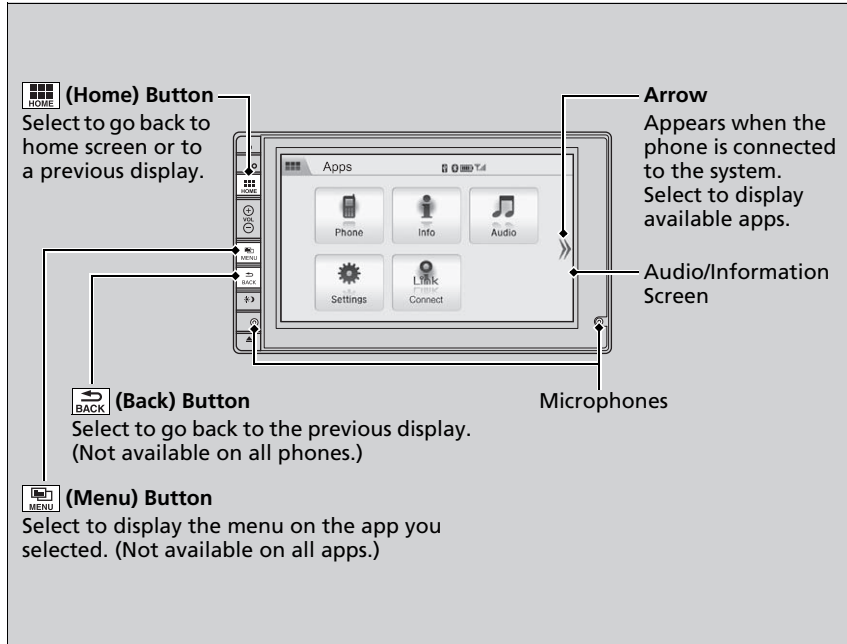
1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings** to go to the settings screen.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **Aspect Ratio Adjustment**.
5. Select the setting you want.
6. Select **OK**.

▶▶ Playing a Video Using the HDMI™

This feature is limited while driving. To play videos, stop your vehicle and apply the parking brake.

Smartphone Apps

You can connect a compatible smartphone to the system to enable integration between the smartphone's approved apps and the vehicle. This allows you to control the phone through the vehicle display. To check smart phone compatibility, download the HondaLink® app, and view connection instructions, visit handsfreelink.honda.com. For the latest apps and feature details, check hondalink.com.



Smartphone Apps

Park in a safe place before connecting your phone and while operating the displayed apps.

Not all phones and apps are compatible with the system. The system does not display all the available apps on smartphone, and some apps need to be preinstalled. Ask a dealer for details.

You need to switch the *Bluetooth*® connection to your smartphone if another electronic device is connected.

Changing the currently paired phone P. 221


The following may vary by phone type:

- Connection methods.
- How to connect a smartphone to the system.
- Apps that can be operated on the screen.
- Display response time/update time.

We do not support every app operation on the display audio.

Ask the app provider for any questions on the app's features.

Siri® Eyes Free


You can talk to Siri using the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to *Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®*.

➔ **Phone Setup** P. 220

▶▶ Siri® Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

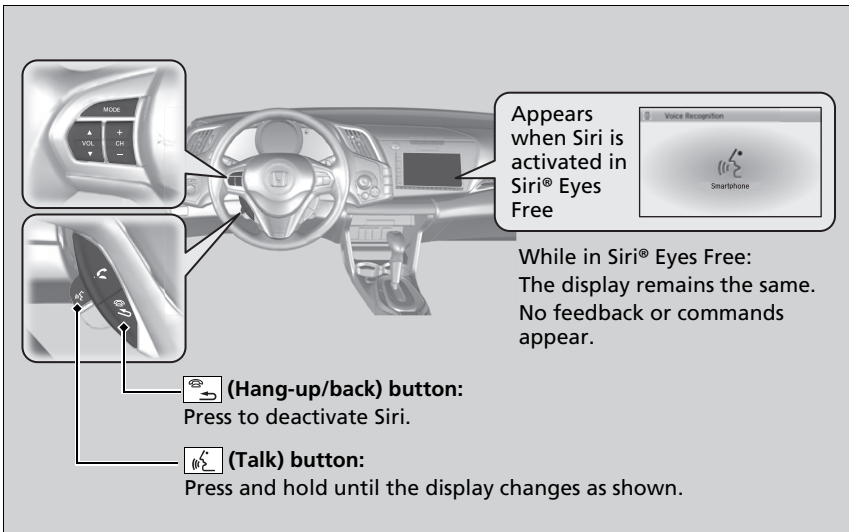
Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

While driving we recommend only using Siri through the  button on the steering wheel (Siri® Eyes Free).

▶▶ Using Eyes Free





Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

Using Eyes Free



CD Player

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
Heat Error	High temperature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.
Unplayable File	Track/file format not supported	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.
Bad Disc Please check Owner's Manual Please push eject button	Mechanical error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the  (eject/CLOSE) button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared. Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again.
Mecha Error		<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Protecting CDs P. 200
Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual	Servo error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the error message reappears, press the  (eject/CLOSE) button, and pull out the disc. Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message repeats, or the disc cannot be removed, contact a dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
Check Disc	Disc error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed. <p> Protecting CDs P. 200</p>

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
USB Error	Appears when there is a problem with the USB adapter unit. Check if the device is compatible with the USB adapter unit.
The connected USB device has a problem. See Owner's Manual	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
Unsupported Version	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
Connect Retry	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about 3 seconds, then plays the next song.
No Data	iPod Appears when the iPod is empty. Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
	USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash drive. Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.

U.S. models

Pandora®

If an error occurs while playing Pandora®, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
The maximum number of stations has been created. To create more, please delete one or more previously created stations.	Appears when the number of stations that can be created has been reached. Follow the message instructions.
Unable to create new station. Please try again.	
Unable to play Pandora. Please try again later.	Appears when the commanded operation has failed. Try again later.
Unable to save bookmark.	
This Pandora station is currently not available. Please select another station.	Appears when the station you selected is not available. Change a station, or try again later.
Unable to play Pandora. When stopped, log-in to Pandora.	Appears when you have not logged into Pandora®. Follow the message instructions.
Unable to connect to Pandora. When stopped, check your mobile phone.	
Unable to play Pandora. Please try again later.	Appears when the connection has failed. Check your device and try again.
Connect Retry	

Error Message	Solution
Unsupported	Appears when the device is not supported. Use another device.
Unsupported Version	Appears when your version of Pandora® is not supported. Update Pandora® to the latest version.
Pandora App version is not supported	
Unable to connect to the phone. Please make sure the phone's Bluetooth setting is ON and try again.	Appears when Pandora® is unable to play music. Check the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® status on your device.
No Data	Appears when no data is available with Pandora® activated. Reboot the app and reconnect the device.
The connected USB device has a problem. See Owner's Manual	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
No stations found. Please create a station.	Appears when there is no station list on the device. Create one on your device.
To begin listening, select a station from the Stations list.	Appears when there is no station on the app. Store some.
The maximum number of tracks that can be skipped has been reached.	Appears when you try to skip a song or select Dislike over the predetermined number of times in an hour.

Recommended CDs

- Use only high-quality CD-R or CD-RW discs labeled for audio use.
- Use only CD-R or CD-RW discs on which the recordings are closed.
- Play only standard round-shaped CDs.

The CD packages or jackets should have one of these marks.



Recommended CDs

A Dual-disc cannot play on this audio unit. If recorded under certain conditions, a CD-R or CD-RW may not play either.

CDs with MP3, WMA, or AAC files

- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

Continued

■ Protecting CDs

Follow these precautions when handling or storing CDs:

- Store a CD in its case when it is not being played.
- When wiping a CD, use a soft clean cloth from the center to the outside edge.
- Handle a CD by its edge. Never touch either surface.
- Never insert foreign objects into the CD player.
- Keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.
- Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the CD.
- Avoid fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens on the CD.

▶▶ Protecting CDs

NOTICE

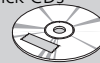
Do not insert a damaged CD. It may be stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

Examples:

- Bubbled, wrinkled, labeled, and excessively thick CDs



Bubbled/
Wrinkled



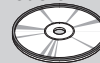
With Label/
Sticker



Using
Printer Label
Kit



Sealed

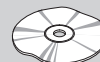


With Plastic Ring

- Damaged CDs



Chipped/
Cracked



Warped



Burrs

- Poor quality CDs

- Small CDs



3-inch
(8-cm)
CD

Compatible iPod, iPhone and USB Flash Drives

■ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80/160 GB (launched in 2007)
iPod classic 120 GB (launched in 2008)
iPod classic 160 GB (launched in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 6th generation) launch in 2010
iPod nano (7th generation) launch in 2012
iPod touch (1st to 4th generation) launch in 2010
iPod touch (5th generation) launch in 2012
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5c/iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus

■ USB Flash Drives

- USB flash drives of 256 MB or higher are recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

⌘ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

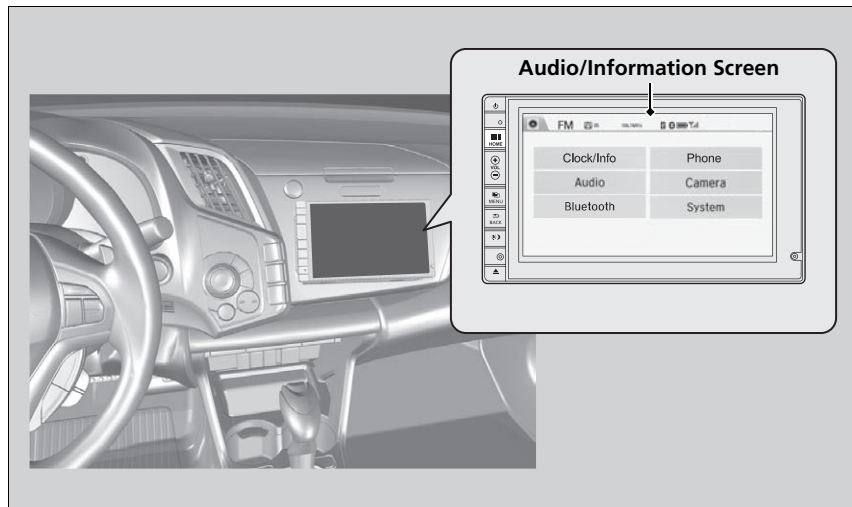
⌘ USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, select **Settings**, then select a setting item.



» Customized Features

Models with navigation system

See the Navigation System Manual for information of the customized features.

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to **P**.

» How to customize

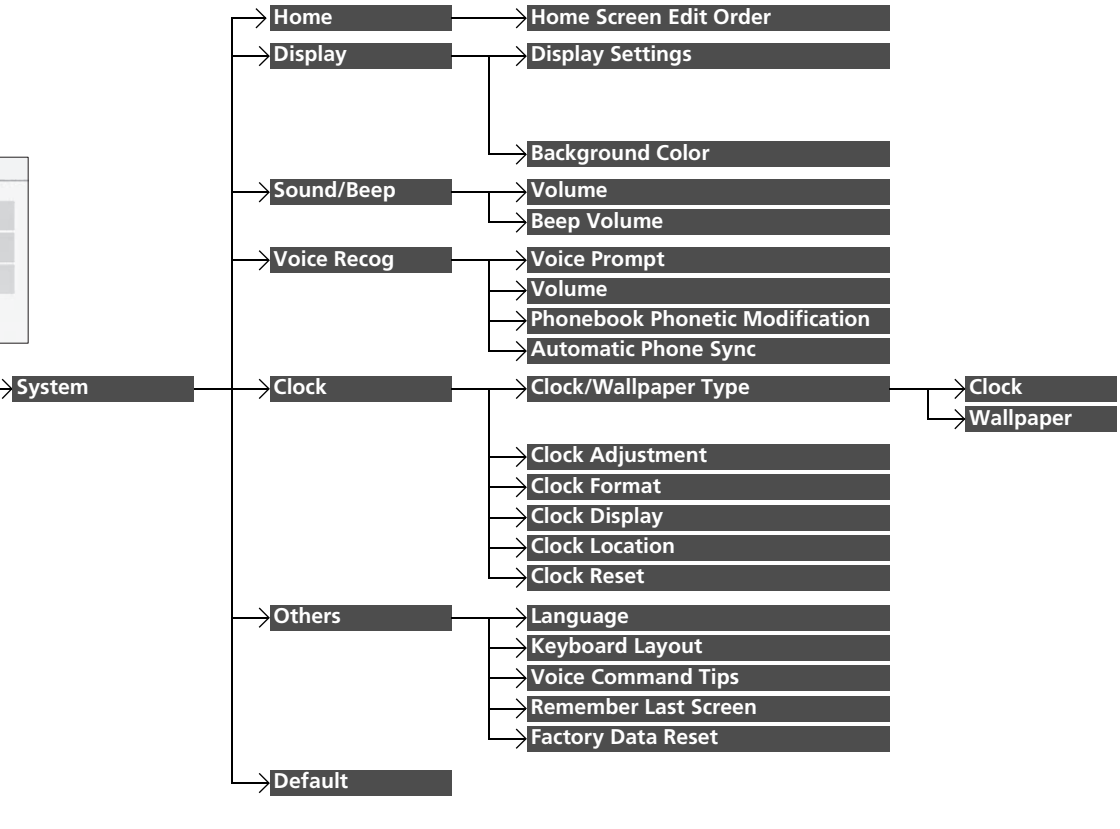
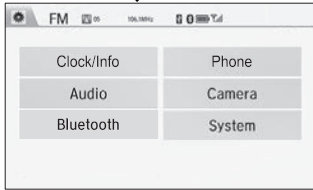
To customize other features, select **Settings**.

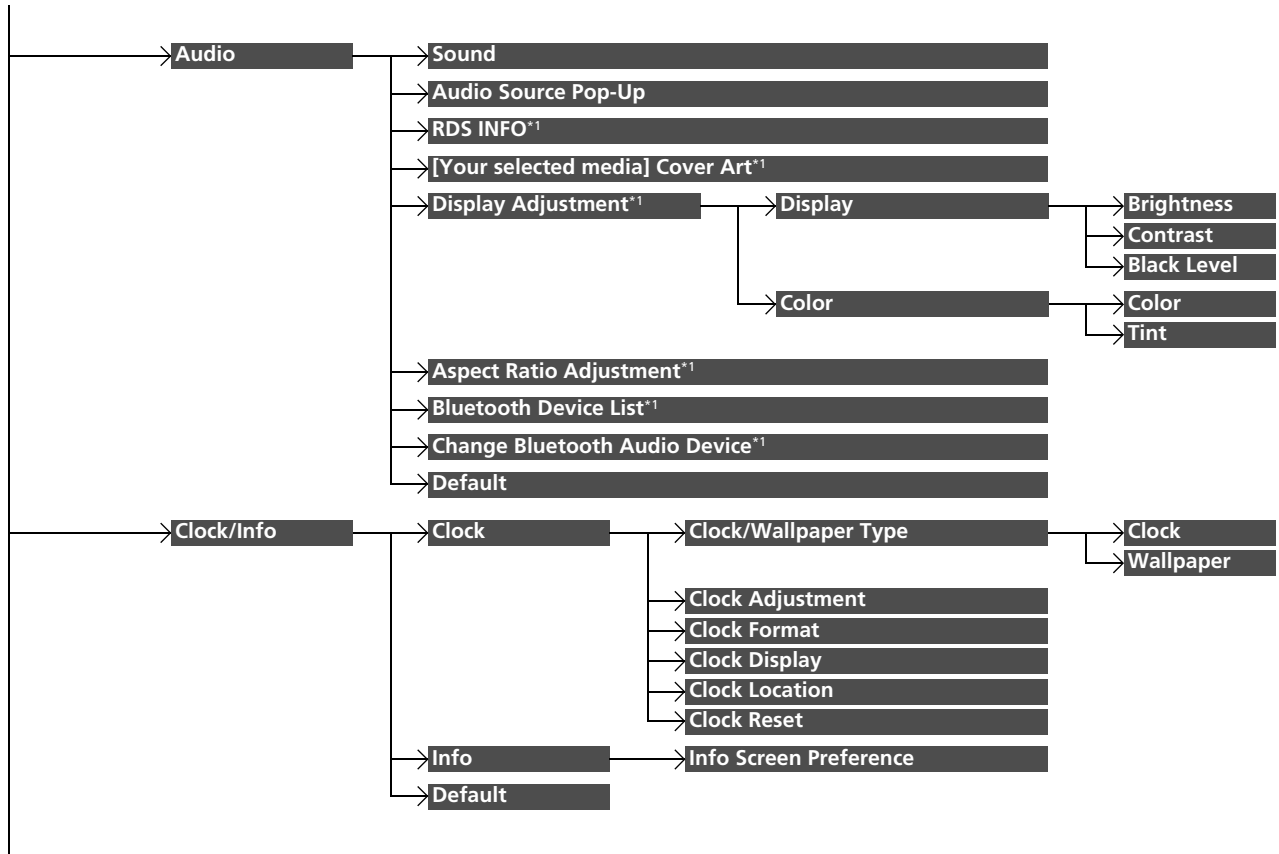
➤ **List of customizable options** P. 206

■ Customization Flow

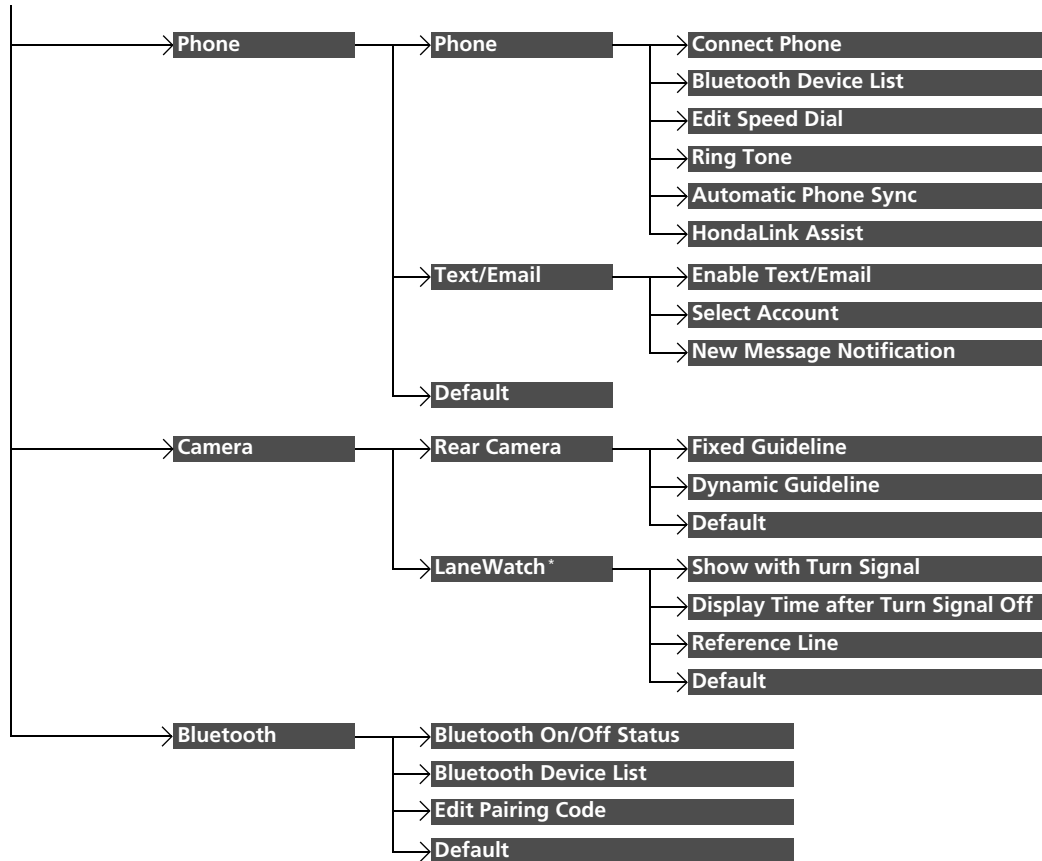
Press the  button.

Select **Settings**.






*1: May change depending on your currently selected source.



* Not available on all models

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings		
System	Home	Home Screen Edit Order  Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout P. 170	—		
	Display	Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—	
		Display Settings	Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
		Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—	
	Background Color	Changes the background color of the audio/information screen.	Blue^{*1}/Amber/Red/Violet		
	Sound/Beep	Volume	Changes the sound volume.	0-6^{*1}-11	
		Beep Volume	Changes the beep volume.	Off/1/2^{*1}/3	
	Voice Recog	Voice Prompt	Turns the voice prompt on and off.	On^{*1}/Off	
		Volume	Changes the volume of the voice prompt.	0-6^{*1}-11	
		Phonebook Phonetic Modification	Modifies a voice command for the phonebook.	—	
Automatic Phone Sync	Sets a phonebook data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.	On/Off			

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
System	Clock/Wallpaper Type	Clock	Changes the clock display type.	Analog/Digital^{*1}/Small Digital/Off
		Wallpaper	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Changes the wallpaper type. Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. Deletes an image file for a wallpaper. ▶ Wallpaper Setup P. 171	Blank/Galaxy^{*1}/Metallic
	Clock	Clock Adjustment	Adjusts Clock. ▶ Clock P. 108	—
		Clock Format	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	12H^{*1}/24H
		Clock Display	Selects whether the clock display comes on.	On^{*1}/Off
		Clock Location	Changes the clock display layout.	Upper Right^{*1}/Upper Left/Lower Right/Lower Left/Off
		Clock Reset	Cancels/Resets all customized items for clock display as default.	Yes/No
		Language	Changes the display language.	English^{*1}/Français/Español
	Others	Keyboard Layout	Selects the on-screen keyboard type.	Alphabet/QWERTY^{*1}
		Voice Command Tips	Alerts you when manual control of the system is disabled to prevent distraction while driving. Only voice commands are available.	On^{*1}/Off
		Remember Last Screen	Selects whether the device remembers the last screen.	On/Off^{*1}
		Factory Data Reset	Resets all the settings to their factory default. ▶ Defaulting All the Settings P. 212	Yes/No




*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
System	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the System group as default.	Yes/No	
	Sound	Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Adjusting the Sound P. 173	-6 ~ 0*1 ~ +6 (BASS, TREBLE and Subwoofer), RR9~0*1~FR9 (FADER), L9~0*1~R9 (BALANCE), Off/Low/Mid*1/High (Speed Volume Compensation)	
Audio	Audio Source Pop-Up	Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on or not when Audio is selected on the home screen.	On/Off*1	
	FM mode RDS INFO	Turns on and off the RDS information.	On/Off*1	
	FM, AM, iPod, Pandora®, USB or CD mode [Your selected media] Cover Art	Turns on and off the cover art display.	On*1/Off	
	HDMI™ mode Display Adjustment	Display	Brightness Contrast <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> System P. 206 Black Level	
		Color	Color Changes the color of the audio/information screen. Tint Changes the tint of the audio/information screen.	— —

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	HDMI™ mode Aspect Ratio Adjustment	Changes the aspect ratio and zoom settings of the audio/information screen.	Normal/Full* ¹ /Zoom
	iPod, Pandora® or Bluetooth® Audio mode Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone. ▶ Phone Setup P. 220	—
	iPod, Pandora® or Bluetooth® Audio mode Change Bluetooth Audio Device	Connects, disconnects or pairs a <i>Bluetooth®</i> Audio device to HFL.	—
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Audio group as default.	Yes/No
Clock/Info	Clock Clock/ Wallpaper Type Clock Adjustment Clock Format Clock Display Clock Location Clock Reset	▶ System P. 206	
	Info Info Screen Preference	Changes the information screen type.	Info Top/Info Menu/Off*¹
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Clock/Info group as default.	Yes/No

* 1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Phone	Connect Phone	Pairs a new phone to HFL, connects or disconnects a paired phone.  Phone Setup P. 220	—	
	Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone.  Phone Setup P. 220	—	
	Edit Speed Dial	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry.  Speed Dial P. 228	—	
	Ring Tone	Selects the ring tone.	Fixed/Mobile Phone ^{*1}	
	Automatic Phone Sync	Sets a phonebook data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.	On/Off	
	HondaLink Assist	Turns HondaLink [®] Assist on and off.	On/Off ^{*1}	
	Text/Email	Enable Text/Email	Turns the text/e-mail message function on and off.	On ^{*1} / Off
		Select Account	Selects a mail or text message account.	—
		New Message Notification	Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail message.	On/Off ^{*1}
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Phone group as default.	Yes/No	

*1:Default Setting

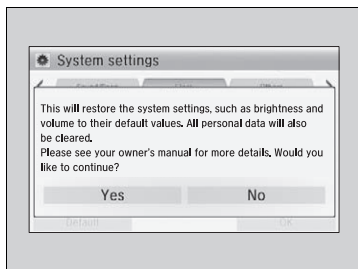
Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Camera	Rear Camera	Fixed Guideline	Selects whether the guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.	On ^{*1} /Off
		Dynamic Guideline	Selects whether the guidelines adjust to the steering wheel angle.	On ^{*1} /Off
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Rear Camera group as default.	Yes/No	
	LaneWatch [*]	Show with Turn Signal	Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to the passenger side.	On ^{*1} /Off
		Display Time after Turn Signal Off	Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after you pull the turn signal lever back.	0 second ^{*1} /2 seconds
		Reference Line	Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor.	On ^{*1} /Off
		Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the LaneWatch group as default.	Yes/No
Bluetooth	Bluetooth On/Off Status	Changes the <i>Bluetooth</i> [®] status.	On ^{*1} /Off	
	Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone, or creates a security PIN. ➤ Phone Setup P. 220	—	
	Edit Pairing Code	Edits the pairing code. ➤ To change the pairing code setting P. 222	Random/Fixed ^{*1}	
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Bluetooth group as default.	Yes/No	

* 1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
 - The confirmation message will appear.
6. Select **Yes** to reset the settings.
7. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
 - The confirmation message will appear. Select **OK**.

►► Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

The following settings will be reset:

- Audio preset settings
- Phonebook entries
- Other display and personal settings.

Models with navigation system

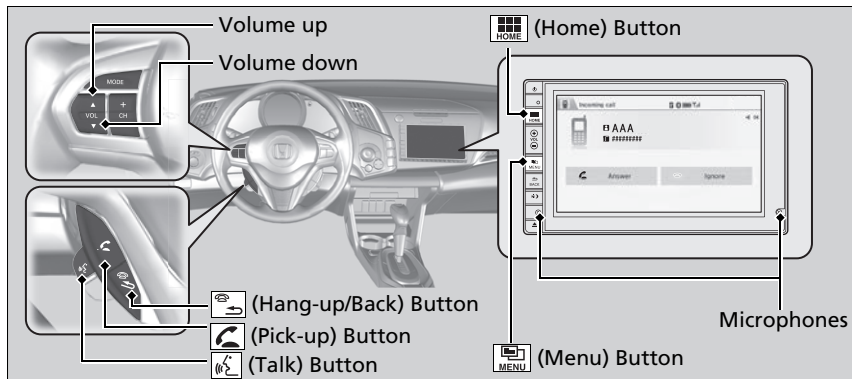
See the Navigation System Manual for how to operate the *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®.

Models without navigation system

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

Using HFL

HFL Buttons



(Pick-up) button: Press to go directly to the phone screen, or to answer an incoming call.

(Hang-up/Back) button: Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or to cancel a command.

(Talk) button: Press to call a number with a stored voice tag, a phonebook, name, or a number.

Using HFL


To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

- U.S.: Visit www.handsfreelink.honda.com, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: Visit www.handsfreelink.ca, or call 1-888-528-7876.

To use HFL, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be in **On**.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 202

Voice control tips



- Aim the vents away from the bottom part of the audio/information screen and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the  button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag, a phonebook, name or a number. Speak clearly and naturally after the beep.
- If the microphones pick up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, use the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

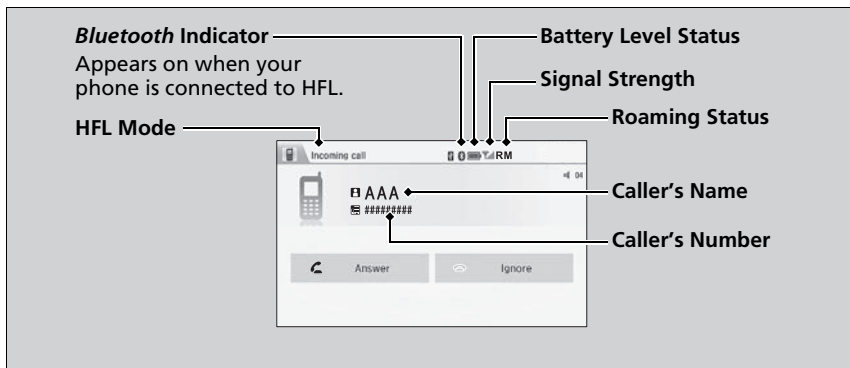
Continued

To go to the **Phone menu** screen:

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Phone** to switch the display to the phone screen.
3. Press the  button.

HFL Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phone book names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➤ **Speed Dial** P. 228

Using HFL

Up to five speed dial entries can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there are no entries in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

➤ **Speed Dial** P. 228

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFL Limitations

An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

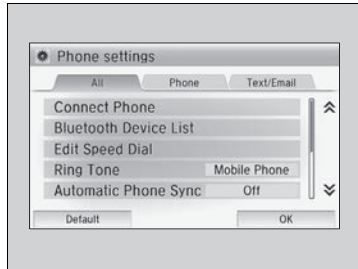
You can change the system language to English, French, or Spanish.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 202

HFL Menu

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system.

■ Phone settings screen

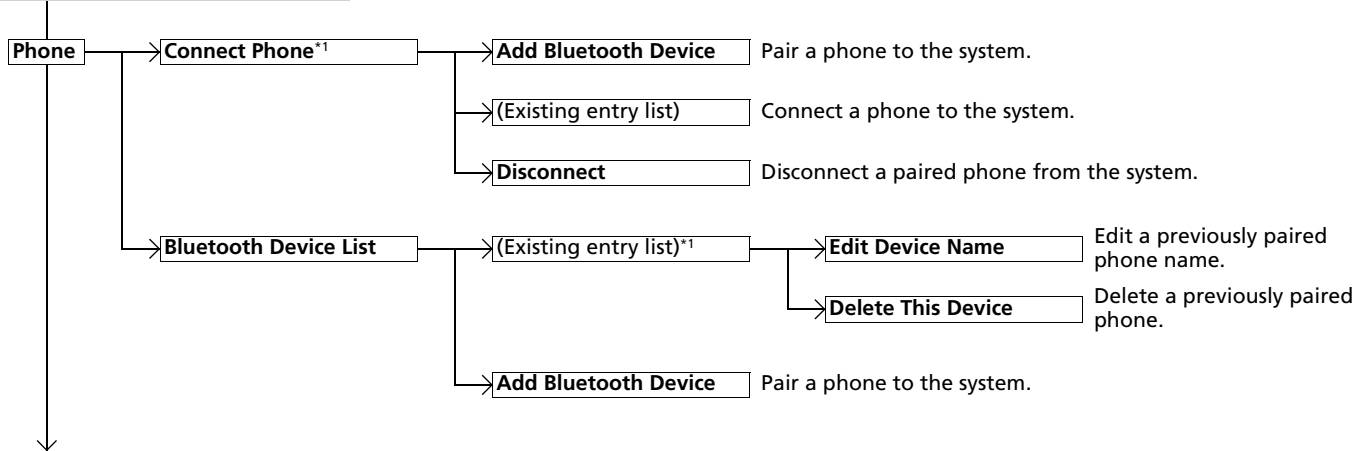


1. Press the button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Phone**.

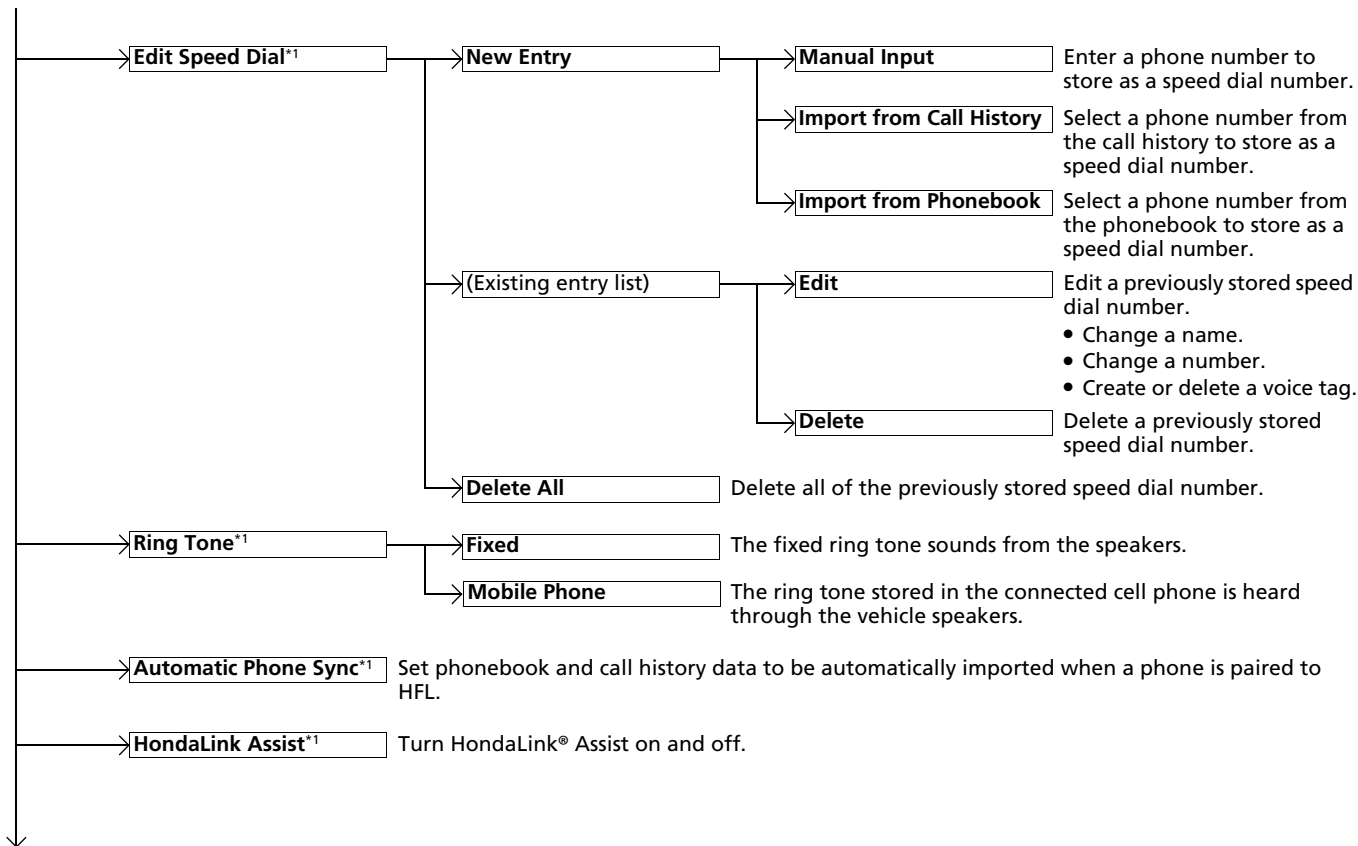
☒ HFL Menu

To use HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

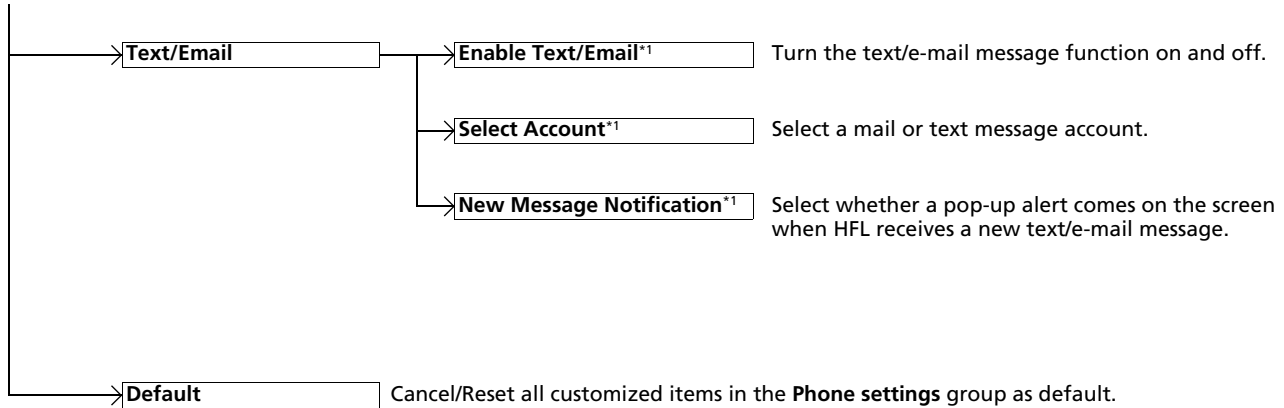
Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is canceled.



*1:Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

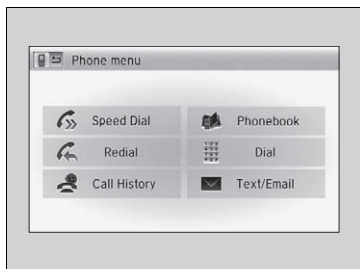


*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

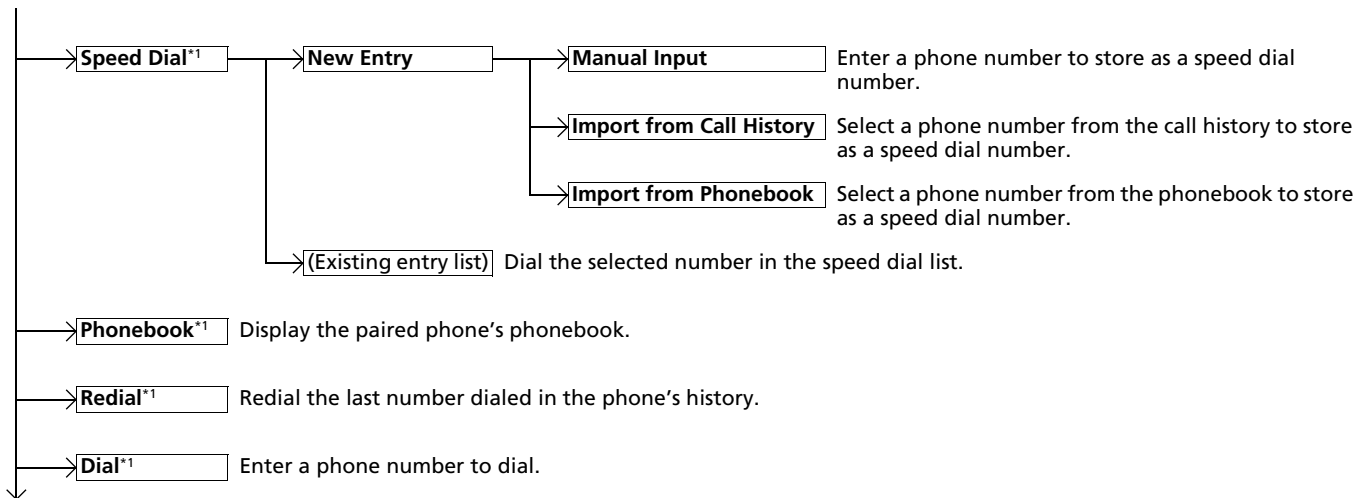


*1:Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

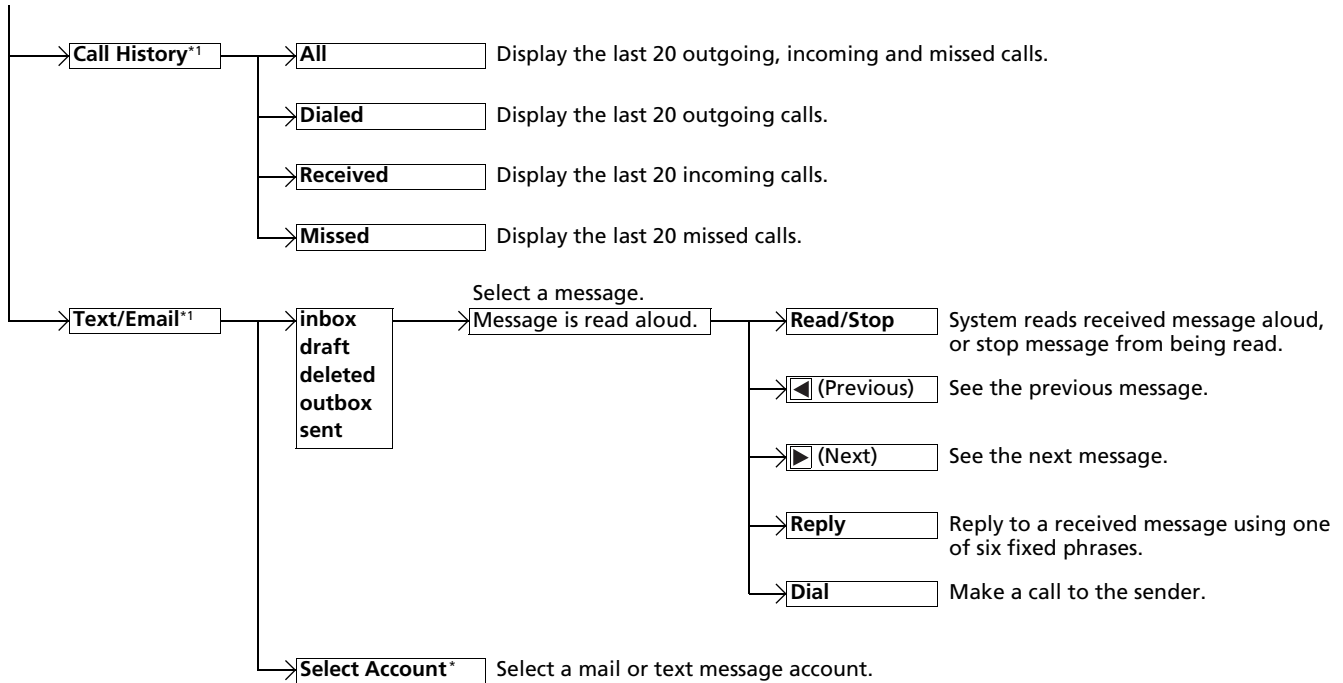
■ Phone menu screen



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Press the  button.



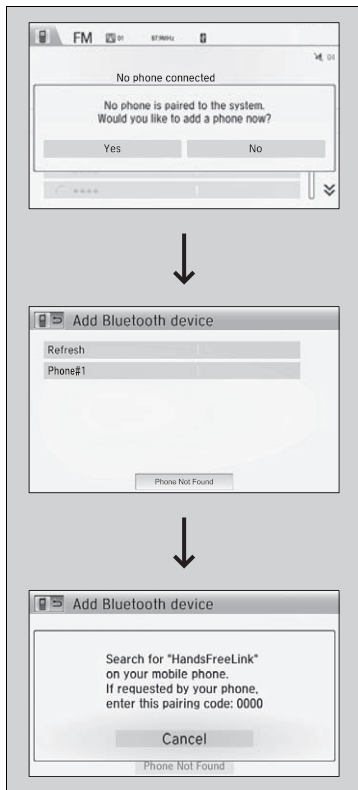
*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.



* 1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

* Not available on all models

Phone Setup



■ To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Yes**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select **Continue**.
 - ▶ HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
4. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
 - ▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
 - ▶ If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone Not Found** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
 - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

☞ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFL before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFL.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system, the system will return to the previous screen.

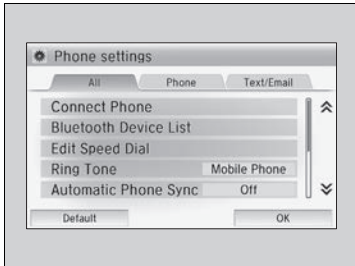


■ **To pair a phone when a phone is already paired**

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 215
2. Select **Connect Phone**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
 ▶ Pairing start.
4. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

■ **Changing the currently paired phone**

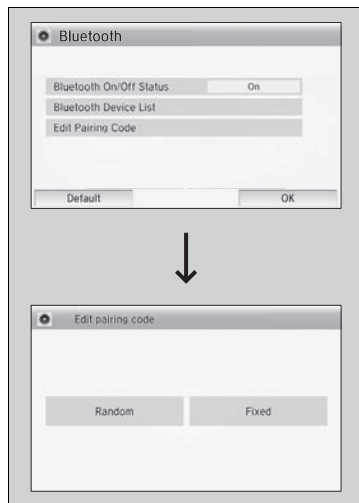
1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 215
2. Select **Connect Phone**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
 ▶ HFL disconnects the current phone and starts searching for another paired phone.




⊠ **Changing the currently paired phone**

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFL will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **Add Bluetooth Device** from the **Connect phone** screen.



■ To change the pairing code setting

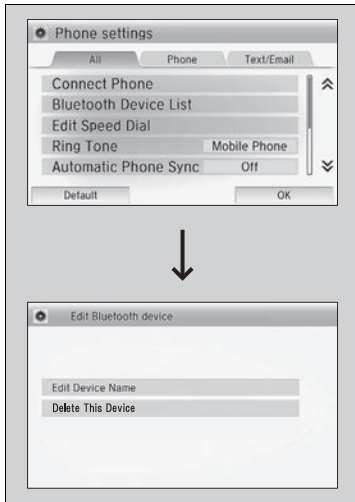
1. Press the  button.
2. Select the **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth**.
4. Select **Edit Pairing Code**.
5. Select **Fixed** or **Random**.

▶▶ To change the pairing code setting

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.

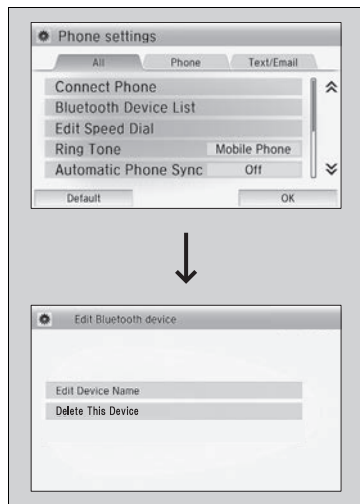
To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.



■ To edit an already-paired phone name

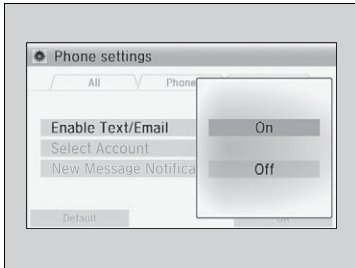
1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 215
2. Select the **Phone** tab.
3. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
4. Select a paired phone you want to edit.
5. Select **Edit Device Name**.
6. Edit the name and select **OK**.



■ To delete a paired phone

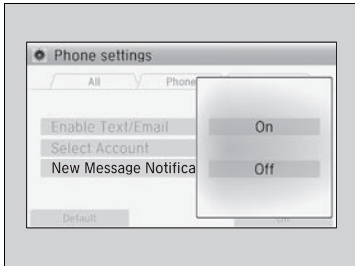
1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 215
2. Select the **Phone** tab.
3. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
4. Select a phone you want to delete.
5. Select **Delete This Device**.
6. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Select **Yes**.
7. A notification appears if the deletion is successful.

■ To Set Up Text/E-mail Message Options



■ To turn on or off the text/e-mail message function

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 215
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Enable Text/Email**.
 - ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.



■ To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 215
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **New Message Notification**.
 - ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

☒ To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice

- On:** A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new message.
- Off:** The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.

■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 215
2. Select the **Phone** tab, then **Ring Tone**.
3. Select **Fixed** or **Mobile Phone**.

▶▶ Ring Tone

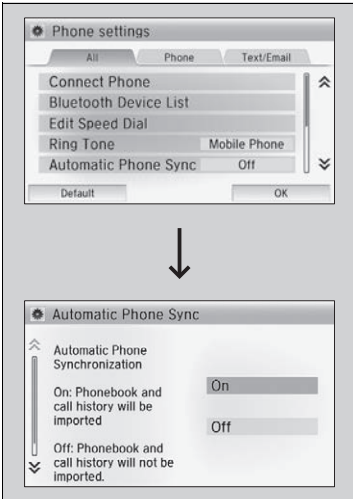
Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.
Mobile Phone: The ring tone stored in the connected cell phone is heard through the vehicle speakers.

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History



■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

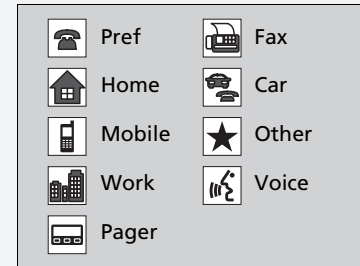


■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 215
2. Select the **Phone** tab, then **Automatic Phone Sync**.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

⌘ Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a name from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

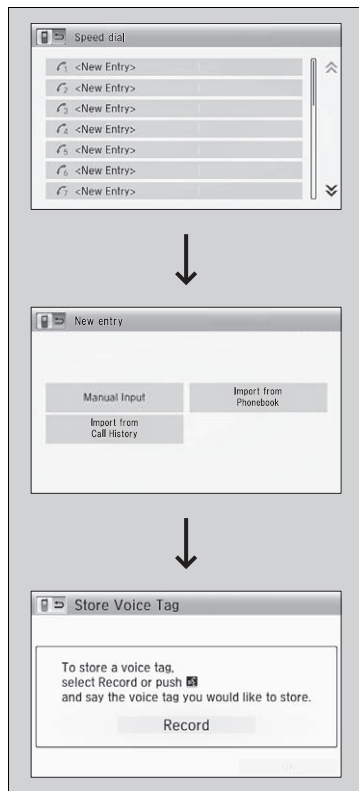


On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

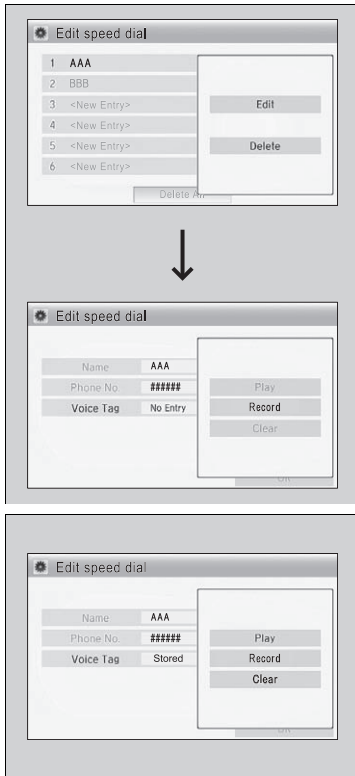


To store a speed dial number:


1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 - ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 218
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select **New Entry**.
4. Select a place to choose a number.
 - From **Import from Call History**:
 - ▶ Select a number from the call history.
 - From **Manual Input**:
 - ▶ Input the number manually.
 - From **Import from Phonebook**:
 - ▶ Select a number from the connected cell phone's imported phonebook.
5. When the speed dial is successfully stored from **Import from Call History** or **Import from Phonebook**, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.
6. Select **Record** to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.
 - ▶ Using the [RECORD] button, follow the prompts to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.

Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the [RECORD] button to call the number using the voice tag. Say "Call" and the voice tag name.



■ **To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number**

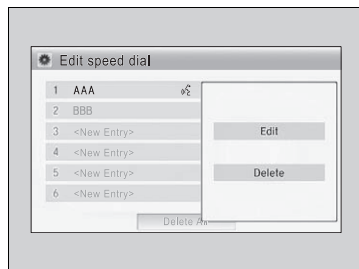
1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 215
2. Select the **Phone** tab, then **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
 - ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
 - ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
5. Select **Record** to store the voice tag.
6. Using the  button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

■ **To delete a voice tag**

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 215
2. Select the **Phone** tab, then **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
 - ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
 - ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

☒ Speed Dial

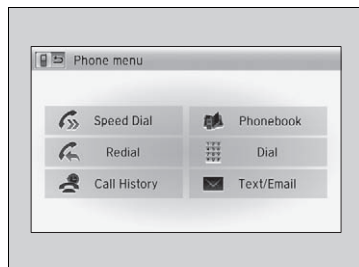
Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
 Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.
 It is easier for the system to recognize a longer name.
 For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."



■ To delete a speed dial


1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 215
2. Select the **Phone** tab, then **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
 ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

■ Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

▶▶ Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry, phonebook name, or number can be dialed by voice from most screens. Press the  button and say "Call" and the stored voice tag name.


Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



■ **To make a call using the imported phonebook**

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 218
2. Select **Phonebook**.
3. Select a name.
 ▶ You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.
 ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering letters.
4. Select a number.
 ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ **To make a call using a phone number**

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 218
2. Select **Dial**.
3. Select a number.
 ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select 
 ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

☒ **To make a call using the imported phonebook**

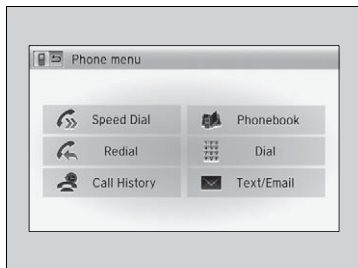
This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

- ▶ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 214
- ▶ **Speed Dial** P. 228

☒ **To make a call using a phone number**

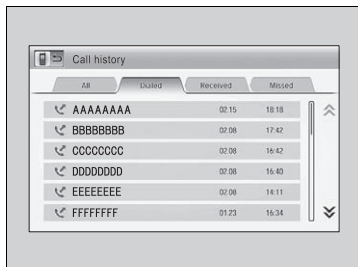
This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

- ▶ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 214
- ▶ **Speed Dial** P. 228



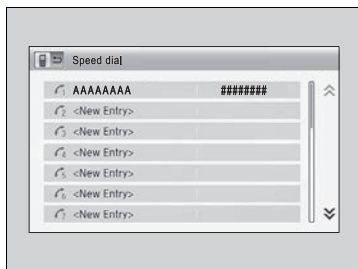
■ **To make a call using redial**

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 - ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 218
2. Select **Redial**.
 - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ **To make a call using the call history**
Call history is stored by **All, Dialed, Received, and Missed.**

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 - ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 218
2. Select **Call History**.
3. Select **All, Dialed, Received, or Missed.**
4. Select a number.
 - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ **To make a call using a speed dial entry**

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 - ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 218
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select a number.
 - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

▶▶ To make a call using redial

Press and hold the button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's history.

▶▶ To make a call using the call history

The call history displays the last 20 all, dialed, received, or missed calls. (Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)

▶▶ To make a call using a speed dial entry

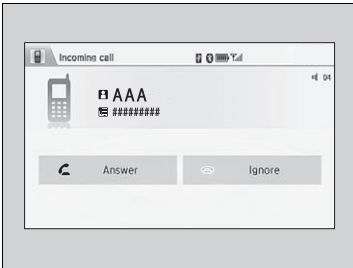
When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 228



Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.

Press the button and follow the prompts.

Receiving a Call

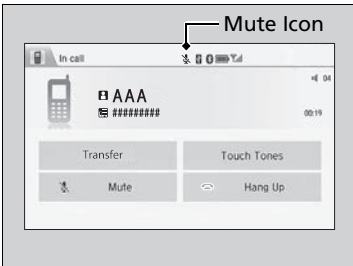


When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the  button to answer the call.
Press the  button to decline or end the call.

Options During a Call

The available options appear on the screen during a call.



Mute: Mute your voice.


▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.


Transfer: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

Touch Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.


Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the  and  buttons.

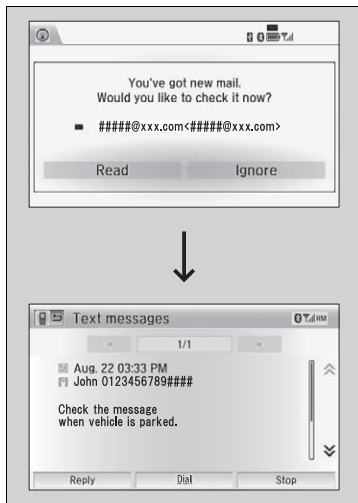
Options During a Call

Touch Tones: Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

■ Receiving a Text/E-mail Message

HFL can display newly received text and e-mail messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a connected cell phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.



1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text or e-mail message.
2. Select **Read** to listen to the message.
 - ▶ The text or e-mail message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
3. To discontinue the message read-out, select **Stop**.

▣ Receiving a Text/E-mail Message

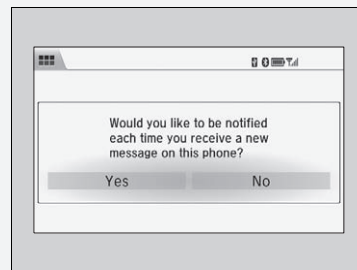
The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text and e-mail messages.

State or local laws may limit your use of the HFL text/e-mail message feature. Only use the text/e-mail message feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

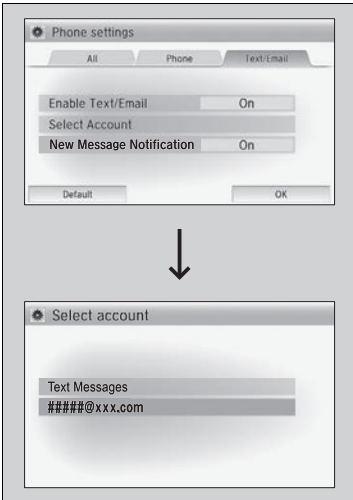
When you receive a text or e-mail message for the first time since the phone is paired to HFL, you are asked to turn the **New Message Notification** setting to **On**.

▶ **To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice** P. 225



Selecting an E-mail Message Account

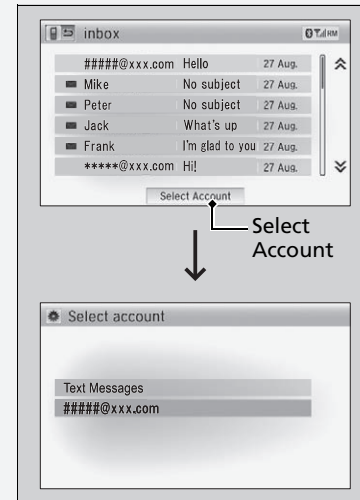
If a paired phone has text or e-mail message accounts, you can select one of them to be active and receive notifications.



1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 215
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Select Account**.
 - ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Text Messages** or an e-mail message account you want.

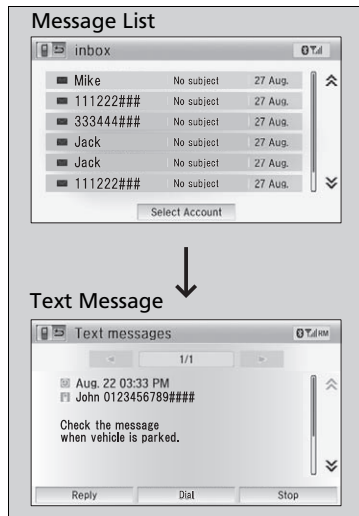
Selecting an E-mail Message Account

You can also select a mail account from the folder list screen or the message list screen.



You can only receive notifications from one text message or mail account at a time.


■ Displaying Messages





■ Displaying text messages

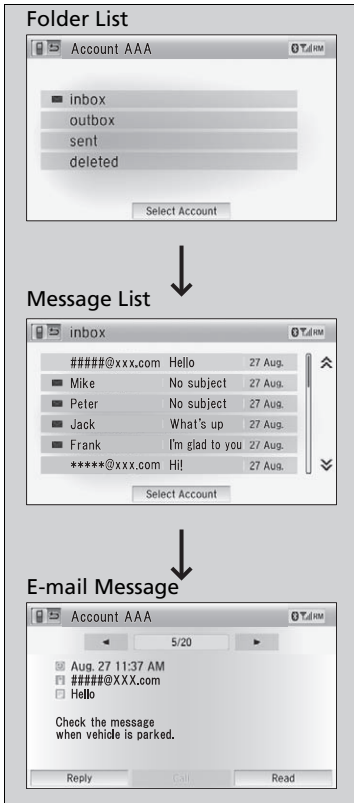
1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 - ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 218
2. Select **Text/Email**.
 - ▶ Select account if necessary.
3. Select **inbox, drafts, sent** or an item you want to.
4. Select a message.
 - ▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

▶▶ Displaying Messages

The  icon appears next to an unread message.

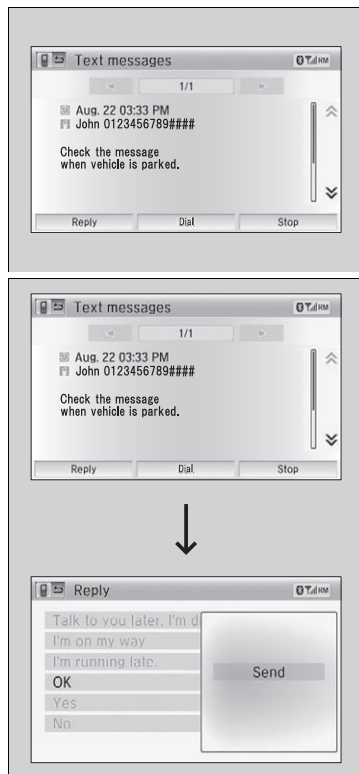
If you delete a message on the phone, the message is also deleted in the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's mailbox.

To see the previous or next message, select  or  on the message screen.



■ Displaying e-mail messages

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 - ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 218
2. Select **Text/Email**.
 - ▶ Select **Select Account** if necessary.
3. Select a folder.
 - ▶ The e-mail message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
4. Select a message.



■ Read or Stop reading a message

1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
 - ▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
 - ☑ **Displaying Messages** P. 236
2. Select **Stop** to stop reading.
 - Select **Read** again to start reading the message from the beginning.

■ Reply to a message

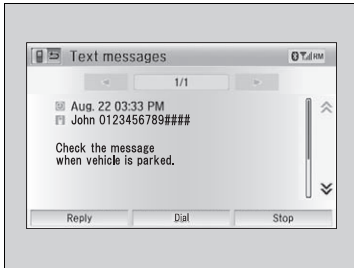
1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
 - ▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
 - ☑ **Displaying Messages** P. 236
2. Select **Reply**.
3. Select the reply message.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Send** to send the message.
 - ▶ **Complete** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

☒ Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:

- **Talk to you later, I'm driving.**
- **I'm on my way.**
- **I'm running late.**
- **OK**
- **Yes**
- **No**

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.

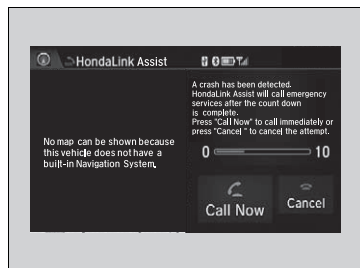


■ Making a call to a sender

1. Go to the text message screen.
2. Select **Dial**.

■ In Case of Emergency

■ Automatic collision notification



If your vehicle’s airbags deploy or if the unit detects that the vehicle is severely impacted, your vehicle automatically will attempt to connect to the HondaLink® operator. If connected, information about your vehicle, its location, and its condition will be sent to the operator; you also can speak to the operator when connected.

IMPORTANT: For vehicles equipped with HondaLink® Assist, owner activation constitutes authorization for Honda to collect information from your vehicle needed to provide the service, and agreement to the Terms of Use at www.hondalink.com/TermsAndConditions. In a crash, HondaLink® Assist will attempt to notify emergency services but NEITHER HONDA NOR ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS GUARANTEE THAT SUCH NOTIFICATION WILL OCCUR.

Honda reserves the right to terminate HondaLink® Assist services at any time or for any reason, and in the future may not be able to provide services due to changes in, or obsolescence of, technology integral to the service or changes in governmental regulation.

▶▶ In Case of Emergency

Your vehicle may not be able to connect to the operator if the battery level is low, the line is disconnected, or you do not have adequate cellular coverage.

You cannot use this emergency services when:

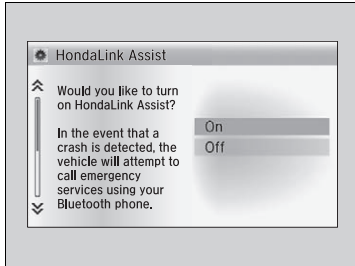
- You travel outside the HondaLink® service coverage areas.
- There is a problem with the connecting devices, such as the microphones, speakers, or the unit itself.

You cannot operate other phone-related functions using the screen while talking to the operator. Select **Hang Up** to terminate the connection to your vehicle.

▶▶ Automatic collision notification

If the unit fails to connect to the operator, it repeatedly tries until it succeeds.

■ To enable notification



1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 215
2. Select the **Phone** tab, then **HondaLink Assist**.
 - ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

☒ To enable notification

Setting options:

On: Notification is available.

Off: Notification is disabled.

Driving



This chapter discusses driving, refueling, and information on items such as accessories.

Before Driving

Driving Preparation	244
Maximum Load Limit.....	247

Towing a Trailer

Towing Your Vehicle	250
---------------------------	-----

When Driving

Starting the Engine	251
Precautions While Driving.....	254
Continuously Variable Transmission*	255

Continuously variable transmission models

Shifting	256
----------------	-----

Manual transmission models

Shifting	261
----------------	-----

Continuously variable transmission models

Auto Idle Stop	264
----------------------	-----

Manual transmission models

Auto Idle Stop	267
3-Mode Drive System.....	270
Plus Sport System	271
Cruise Control	273
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System	276
LaneWatch™*	278
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).....	280
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation	282

Braking

Brake System	284
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	288
Brake Assist System	289

Parking Your Vehicle

When Stopped	290
--------------------	-----

Multi-View Rear Camera

How to Refuel	291
---------------------	-----

Refueling

Fuel Information	293
------------------------	-----

How to Refuel	294
---------------------	-----

Fuel Economy

Improving Fuel Economy.....	296
-----------------------------	-----

Accessories and Modifications

* Not available on all models

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
 - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
 - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
 - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the hood is securely closed.
 - ▶ If the hood opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tires are in good condition.
 - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
 - 📌 **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 331
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
 - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the hood, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the hood for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
 - ▶ Carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe.
 - **Maximum Load Limit** P. 247
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
 - ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mats.
 - ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
 - ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close and lock both doors and the hatch.
 - **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 116
- Adjust your seating position properly.
 - **Adjusting the Seats** P. 141
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
 - ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
 - **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 139
 - **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 138

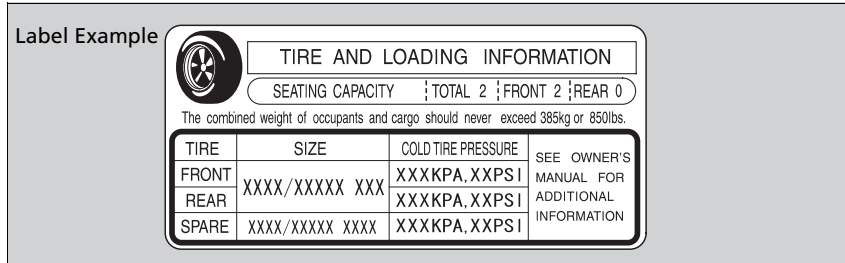
Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the driver's and passenger's seats cannot roll under the seats.
 - ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats, or the operation of the sensors under the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
 - 📖 **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 39
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
 - ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
 - 📖 **Indicators** P. 70

Maximum Load Limit

The maximum load for your vehicle is 450 lbs (204 kg). See the Tire and Loading Information label attached to the driver's doorjamb.



This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit -

- (1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
- (2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- (3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

Maximum Load Limit

⚠ WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):

The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories, and all cargo.

➤ **Specifications** P. 388

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):







The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle axle.

➤ **Specifications** P. 388

- (4)** The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.
(1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
- (5)** Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
- (6)** If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

Load Limits Example

Example 1		≥		+	
	Max Load 450 lbs (204 kg)		Passenger Weight 150 lbs x 1 = 150 lbs (68 kg x 1 = 68 kg)		Cargo Weight 300 lbs (136 kg)
Example 2		≥		+	
	Max Load 450 lbs (204 kg)		Passenger Weight 150 lbs x 2 = 300 lbs (68 kg x 2 = 136 kg)		Cargo Weight 150 lbs (68 kg)

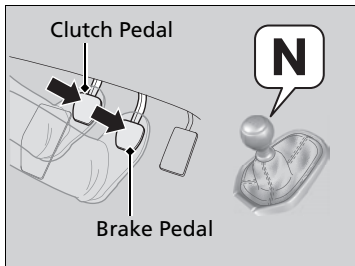
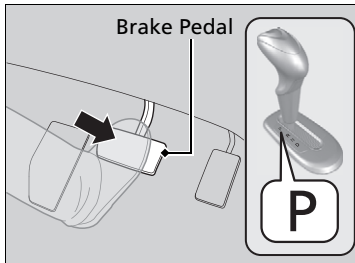
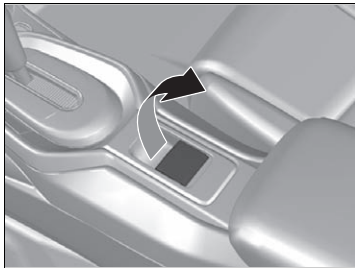
Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

Towing Your Vehicle

Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, refer to the emergency towing information.

➤ **Emergency Towing** P. 383

Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.

Continuously variable transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
 - ▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

Manual transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in **N**. Then depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.
 - ▶ The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

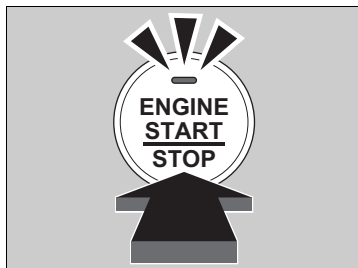
If you live in a region where winter is extremely cold, an engine block heater will improve starting and warming of the engine. If temperatures consistently below -22°F (-30°C) are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration to prevent freezing. Consult a dealer for details.

Manual transmission models

NOTICE

When ambient temperatures are extremely hot or cold, the engine may not crank when you try to start the engine. If this occurs, confirm that the shift lever is in **N** and the clutch pedal is fully depressed, then try to start the engine again. If the engine still does not crank, contact a dealer.

Continued



3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

Continuously variable transmission models

1. Shift to **P**.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Manual transmission models

- If the shift lever is in **N**, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- If the shift lever is in any gear other than **N**, depress the clutch pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Starting the Engine

Bring the smart entry remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the smart entry remote is weak.

- **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak**
P. 364

The engine may not start if the smart entry remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.

If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled

- **Immobilizer System** P. 122

Starting to Drive

Continuously variable transmission models

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the shift lever in **D**. Select **R** when reversing.
2. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
 - ▶ Make sure the electric parking brake indicator goes off.
 - ➔ **Parking Brake** P. 284

Creep aid system

Continuously variable transmission models

With the shift lever in **D** or **N**, this feature applies brake pressure briefly as you release the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Manual transmission models

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or **R** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Continuously variable transmission models

Move the shift lever to **D** when facing uphill, or **R** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.

When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Precautions While Driving

■ In Rain

Avoid driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine and driveline, and cause electrical component failure.

» Precautions While Driving

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel on the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in **[N]**, as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 600 miles (1,000 km) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as to not damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km). You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Continuously Variable Transmission *

Creeping

The engine runs at higher idle speed and creeping increases. Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Precautions While Driving

NOTICE

Following can damage the under spoiler:

- Parking the vehicle by a parking block
- Parallel parking along the road shoulder
- Driving towards the bottom of a hill
- Driving up or down to a different surface level (such as a road shoulder)
- Driving on a rutted or bumpy road
- Driving on a road with potholes

Continuously variable transmission models

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions

Release Button



- P Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine
- R Reverse**
Used when reversing
- N Neutral**
Used when idling
- D Drive**
Used:
 - For normal driving
 - When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode (when driving in ECON or NORMAL mode)
 - For driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode (when driving in SPORT mode)
 - For driving in L mode

▶▶ Shifting

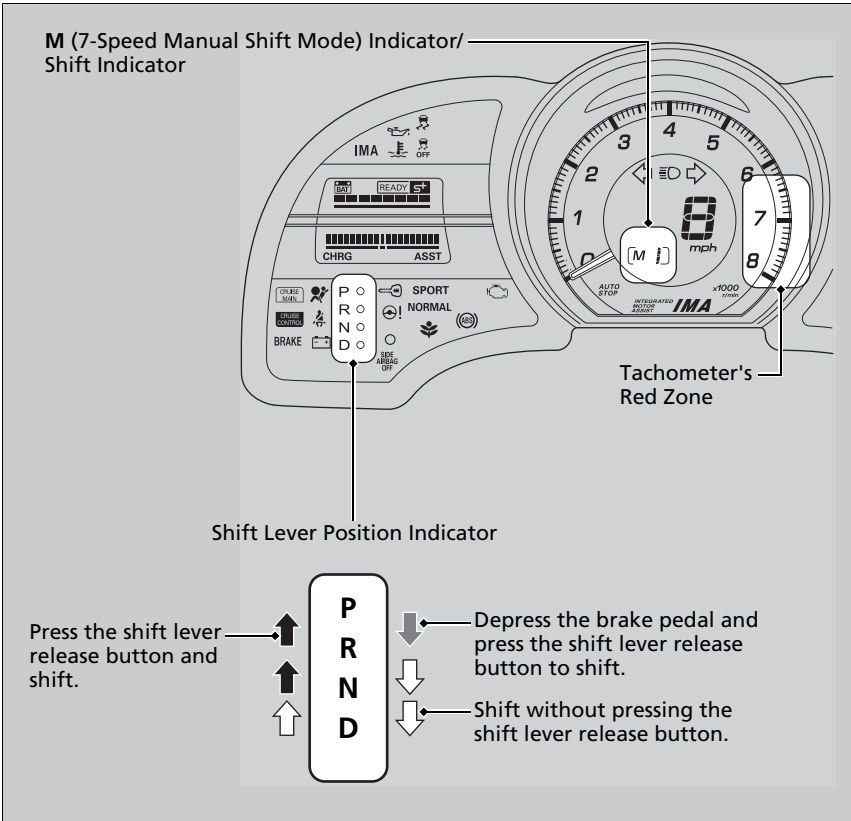
You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) unless the shift lever is in **P**.

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in **N** while the engine is cold.

Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

The engine may cut in and out in **R** or depending on the road condition, even when the engine speed is lower than the tachometer's red zone. This is the engine's computer working to protect the transmission.

Shift Lever Operation



Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.


Whichever position the shift lever is in when driving, a blinking **D** indicator indicates a transmission problem. Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down. Depress the brake pedal first.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without removing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

You can cancel this mode by pressing any of the three driving mode buttons, or pulling the  paddle shifter for a few seconds.

■ When the driving mode is in ECON or NORMAL

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is canceled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

■ When the driving mode is in SPORT

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

▶▶ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

To improve fuel economy, the transmission may shift up to a higher speed than the seventh under certain circumstances. In this case, the number in the shift indicator remains as **7**.

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:

Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.

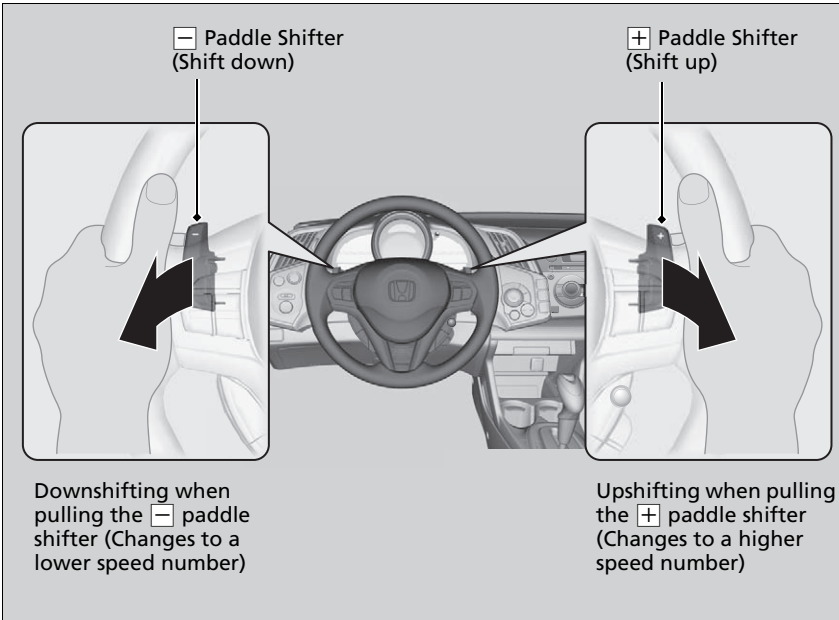
Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.

When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tires to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is canceled and goes back to the normal D driving mode.

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation



7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.

To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

Recommended Shift Points

Use this table as a guideline for efficient fuel economy and effective emission control.

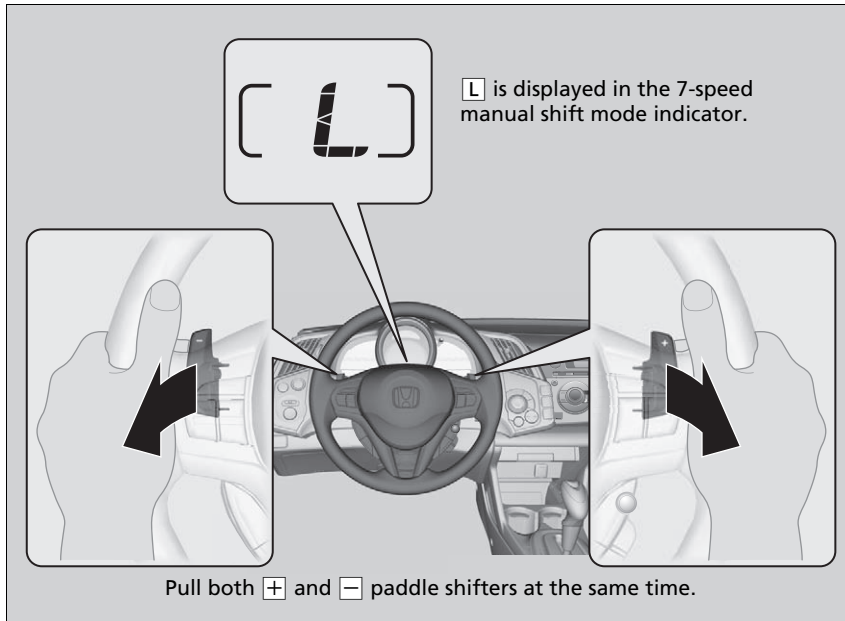
Shift Up	Normal Acceleration
1 to 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 to 3	25 mph (40 km/h)
3 to 4	40 mph (64 km/h)
4 to 5	47 mph (76 km/h)
5 to 6	52 mph (84 km/h)
6 to 7	57 mph (92 km/h)

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.

Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

■ L Mode Operation

To switch to the L mode, pull and hold both paddle shifters (+ and -) at the same time with the shift lever in **D**.



To cancel this mode, pull and hold both paddle shifters again, or press any of the three driving mode buttons. The **L** indicator goes off.

▶▶ L Mode Operation

Use the L mode in the following situations:

- When you want to increase engine braking to maximum when in 7-speed manual shift mode
- When going up or down hills
- When the IMA battery is low

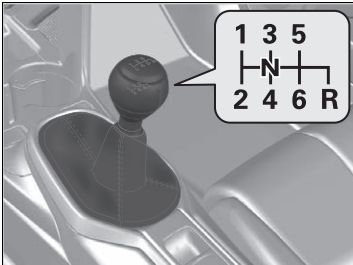
Manual transmission models

Shifting

Shift Lever Operation

Fully depress the clutch pedal to operate the shift lever and change gears, then slowly release the pedal.

Depress the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into **R**, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they do not “grind.”



When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

Shifting

NOTICE

Do not shift to **R** before the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Shifting to **R** before stopping can damage the transmission.

Recommended Shift Points

Driving in the highest gear that allows the engine to run and accelerate smoothly helps to optimize fuel economy and effective emissions control. The following shift points are recommended:

Shift Up	Normal Acceleration
1st to 2nd	15 mph (24 km/h)
2nd to 3rd	25 mph (40 km/h)
3rd to 4th	40 mph (64 km/h)
4th to 5th	47 mph (76 km/h)
5th to 6th	52 mph (84 km/h)

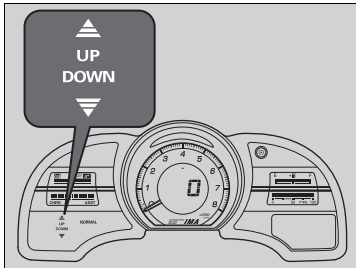
If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. When this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

NOTICE

Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone. Should this occur, it can severely damage your engine.

There is a metallic part on the shift lever. If you leave the vehicle parked outside for a long time on a hot day, be careful before moving the shift lever. Because of heat, the shift lever may be extremely hot. If the outside temperature is low, the shift lever may feel cold.

■ Shift Up/Down Indicators



Come on to indicate when a gear change is appropriate to maintain the most fuel efficient driving style.

The shift up indicator: Comes on when shifting up is recommended.

The shift down indicator: Comes on when shifting down is recommended.

- ▶ The indicators do not come on in the SPORT mode.

▣ Shift Up/Down Indicators

This indicator will not prompt you to downshift to increase engine braking. It is up to you to downshift to increase engine braking when driving downhill.

Always shift down at the appropriate vehicle speed.

The shift down indicator does not come on when downshifting from **2** to **1**.

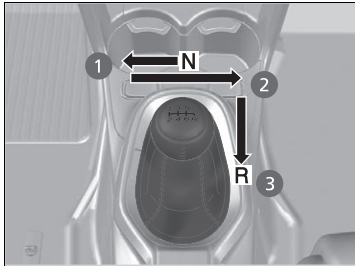
Ambient meter color may change if you do not change gears when a shift indicator illuminates. This can result in a change in fuel economy.

Road and traffic conditions may require you to shift at times other than those indicated.

Reverse Lockout

The manual transmission has a lockout mechanism that stops you from accidentally shifting into **R** from a forward gear while the vehicle is moving above a certain speed.

If you cannot shift to **R** when the vehicle is stopped, do the following:



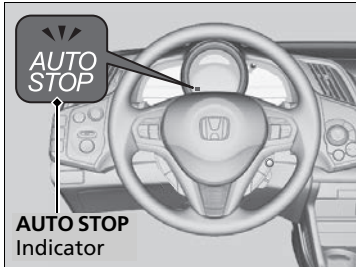
1. Depress the clutch pedal, move the shift lever all the way to the left, and shift to **R**.
2. If you still cannot shift into **R**, apply the parking brake, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
3. Depress the clutch pedal and shift into **R**.
4. Keep depressing the clutch pedal and start the engine.

Have the vehicle checked by a dealer if you have to go through this procedure repeatedly.

Continuously variable transmission models

Auto Idle Stop

To help maximize fuel economy, Auto Idle Stop shuts off the engine when the vehicle comes to a stop, depending on environmental and vehicle operating conditions. The **AUTO STOP** indicator blinks at this time.



The engine then restarts once the vehicle is about to move again, and the indicator goes off.

If the driver's door is opened while the indicator is blinking, a buzzer sounds to notify you that the Auto Idle Stop function is in operation.

Auto Idle Stop


The duration of the Auto Idle Stop operation:

- **Increases** in the ECON mode, compared to normal or sport mode, with climate control in use.
- **Decreases** if you operate the wipers and climate control simultaneously.

Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

The vehicle stops with the shift lever in **D** and the brake pedal depressed.

Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:

- The low temperature indicator is on.
- The IMA battery charge is low.
- The bars of the **ASST/CHRG** indicators do not move when accelerating or decelerating.
- The transmission fluid temperature is low.
- The vehicle comes to a stop again before the vehicle speed reaches 9 mph (15 km/h) after the engine starts.
- Stopped on a steep incline.
- The shift lever is in a position other than **D** or **N**.
- Airflow from the climate control system increases. (Except when in ECON mode)
 - ▶ If you have selected the fan speed manually:
The display shows more than five vertical bars.
- Shift mode is in the L mode.
-  is on (indicator on).

Auto Idle Stop may not activate when:

- Certain ambient conditions (strong sunlight, high or low temperatures, etc.) can prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating, even if the set temperature and the actual interior temperature are around the same. (Except when in ECON mode).
- When humidity in the interior is high.
- The vehicle is stopped by braking suddenly.


Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

The Auto Idle Stop may also activate when the brake pedal is depressed, and the vehicle slows down to a speed below 6 mph (10 km/h).

■ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

The brake pedal is released.

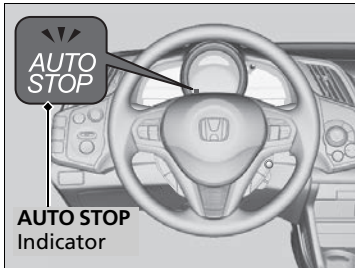
■ The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed when:

- The shift position is changed to **R**.
- Shift mode set in the L mode.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The pressure to the brake pedal is reduced and the vehicle starts moving while stopped on an incline.
- The IMA battery charge becomes low.
- The low temperature indicator comes on.
- The climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.
- The climate control system is being used to dehumidify the interior.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is repeatedly applied and released slightly.
- The  (windshield defogger) button is pressed.

Manual transmission models

Auto Idle Stop

To help maximize fuel economy, the engine automatically stops when the vehicle comes to a stop, depending on environmental and vehicle operating conditions. The **AUTO STOP** indicator blinks at this time. The engine then restarts once the vehicle is about to move again when you depress the clutch pedal fully, and the indicator goes off.



If the driver's door is opened while the indicator is blinking, a buzzer sounds to notify you that the Auto Idle Stop function is in operation.

Auto Idle Stop

If the Auto Idle Stop operating time lasts long enough to lower the 12-volt battery charge or the IMA battery charge, the engine may not restart automatically.

Manually turn off the engine when you leave your vehicle.

The duration of Auto Idle Stop operation:


- **Increases** in the ECON mode, compared to normal or sport mode, with climate control in use.
- **Decreases** if you operate the wipers and climate control simultaneously.

■ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

Stopping with the brake, the clutch pedal is fully depressed, and the shift lever is in **[N]**.

- ▶ To restart the engine automatically, depress the clutch pedal.

■ Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:

- The low temperature indicator is on.
- The IMA battery charge is low.
- The bars of the **ASST/CHRG** indicators do not move when accelerating or decelerating.
- The vehicle comes to a stop again before the vehicle speed reaches 9 mph (15 km/h) after the engine starts.
- The shift lever is in **[R]**.
- Airflow from the climate control system increases. (Except when in ECON mode)
 - ▶ If you have selected the fan speed manually:
The display shows more than five vertical bars.
-  is on (indicator on).

■ Auto Idle Stop may not activate when:

- The climate control system is in use, and there is a significant difference between the set temperature and the actual interior temperature. (Except when in ECON mode).
- When humidity in the interior is high.
- The vehicle is stopped by braking suddenly.

☞ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

The brake pedal is depressed, the vehicle slows down to a speed below 19 mph (30 km/h), and the clutch pedal is fully pressed.

The engine may not stop or restart automatically if you fail to fully depress the clutch pedal. Keeping the proper driving positions makes it easier for you to depress the clutch pedal fully.

☞ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 141

■ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

The clutch pedal is fully depressed, and the shift lever is moved to a position other than **N**.

■ The engine automatically restarts when the clutch pedal is fully depressed even if the shift lever is in **N** when:

- The low temperature indicator comes on.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- The IMA battery charge becomes low.
- The climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.
- The climate control system is being used to dehumidify the interior.

The engine automatically restarts when the pressure on the brake pedal is repeatedly applied and released slightly during a stop. This applies even if the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.


■ When the Auto Idle Stop Indicator Starts Blinking Rapidly

Fully depress the clutch pedal.

- ▶ The engine automatically restarts.

⊗ When the Auto Idle Stop Indicator Starts Blinking Rapidly

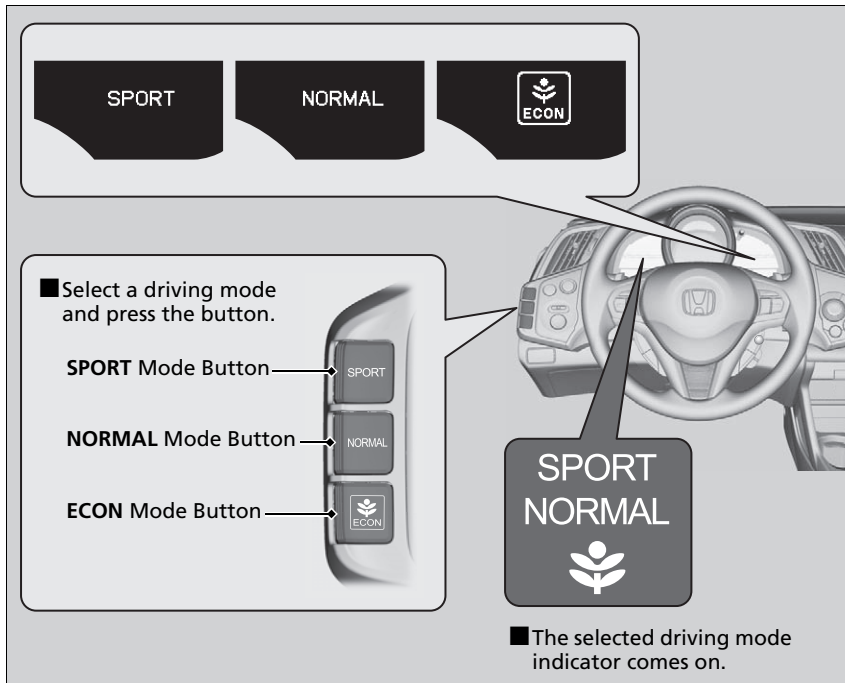
The indicator starts blinking rapidly under the following conditions:

- The  (windshield defogger) button is pressed.
- When the climate control system is in use and moisture builds up inside the vehicle.
- When the climate control system is in use and the difference between the set temperature and the actual temperature inside the vehicle becomes significant.

3-Mode Drive System

Driving mode is in NORMAL when you set the power mode to ON.

To change driving modes, press the desired mode button. The corresponding mode indicator comes on in the instrument panel, and the mode icon appears briefly on the multi-information display.



▶▶ 3-Mode Drive System

To keep the system in ECON mode the next time power is set to ON, change the setting in the multi-information display settings.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 98

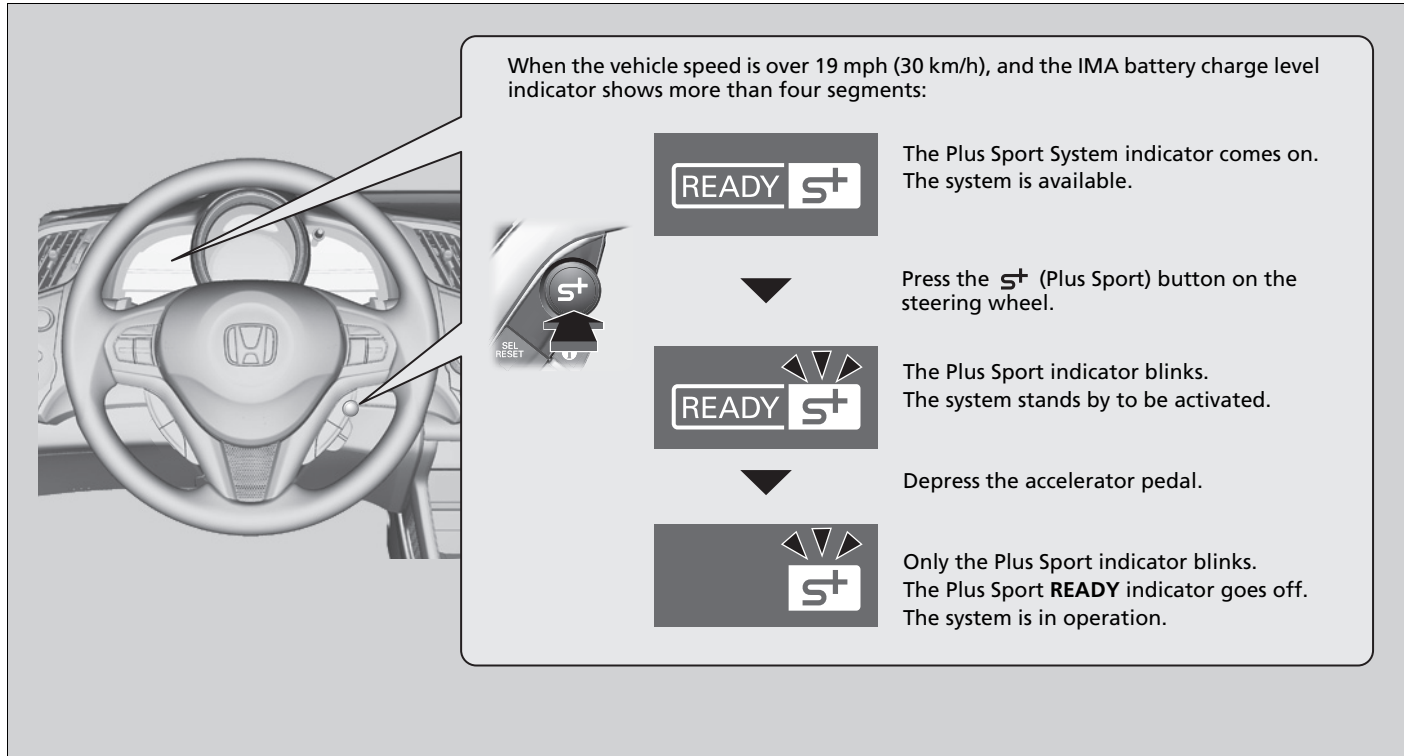
ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by changing the performance of the engine, transmission, cruise control, and climate control and IMA systems.

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.


Plus Sport System


Helps the vehicle to momentarily accelerate with more engine and electric motor assist power when you depress the accelerator pedal.


This system can be used in any driving mode (SPORT, NORMAL, or ECON).




When the vehicle speed is over 19 mph (30 km/h), and the IMA battery charge level indicator shows more than four segments:

- 

The Plus Sport System indicator comes on. The system is available.
- 

Press the **st+** (Plus Sport) button on the steering wheel.
- 

The Plus Sport indicator blinks. The system stands by to be activated.
- 

Depress the accelerator pedal.

Only the Plus Sport indicator blinks. The Plus Sport **READY** indicator goes off. The system is in operation.

■ **To cancel the Plus Sport System:**

To cancel the ready-to-be activated system:

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal for more than five seconds while the Plus Sport indicator is blinking.
- Press the **S+** button again.
- Depress the brake or clutch pedal.
 - ▶ The Plus Sport indicator stops blinking.

To stop the system in operation, do any of the following:

- Release the accelerator pedal.
- Press the **S+** button again.
 - ▶ The Plus Sport indicator stops blinking, then stays on, and the Plus Sport **READY** indicator comes on.

▶▶ To cancel the Plus Sport System:

The Plus Sport System automatically shuts itself off with the system ready to be activated, or cancels if the system is in operation when:

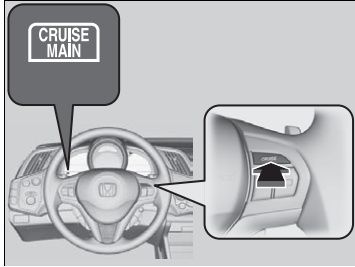
- You are making a sharp turn while driving.
- The wheel speed between the front and rear, or left and right tires becomes significantly different due to an icy or wet, and slippery road.

The ambient meter changes color to red in NORMAL and ECON mode while the system is in operation.

The Plus Sport System can momentarily help you accelerate your vehicle. However, it is still your responsibility to decide when to use the system. Drive safely at speeds appropriate for the conditions.

Cruise Control

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on freeways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.



Press the **CRUISE** button on the steering wheel.

CRUISE MAIN is on in the instrument panel. Cruise control is ready to use.

- Shift positions for cruise control (Manual transmission): In 2nd to 6th
- Shift positions for cruise control (Continuously variable transmission): In **D**
- Vehicle speed for cruise control: Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~

⊗ Cruise Control

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control:
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE** button.

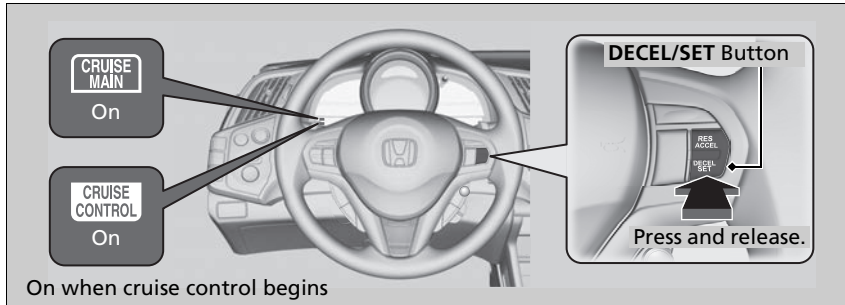
While in the ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

Manual transmission models

When the engine speed slows down, try to downshift.

You can maintain the set speed if you change gear within five seconds.

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed

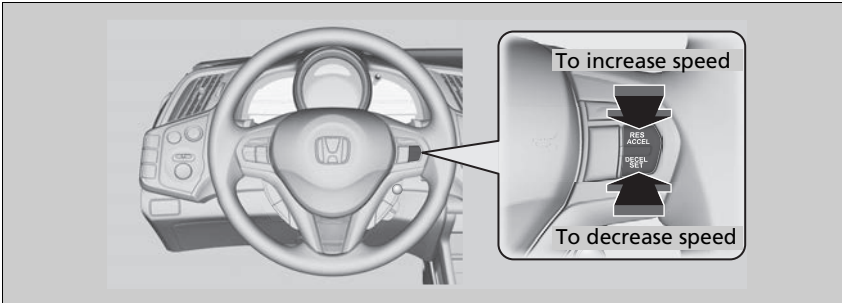


Take your foot off the pedal and press the **DECEL/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **DECEL/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

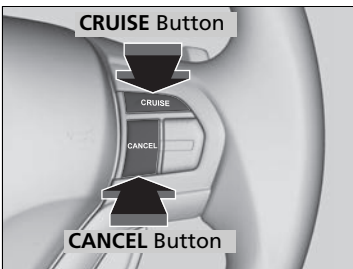
To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/ACCEL** or **DECEL/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

Manual transmission models

- Depress the clutch pedal for five seconds or more.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **DECEL/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/ACCEL** button while driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

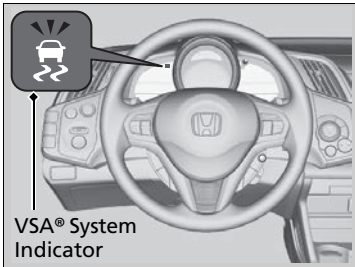
- When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 22 mph (35 km/h) or less, cruise control is canceled automatically.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

Helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

■ VSA® Operation



When VSA® activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

▣ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

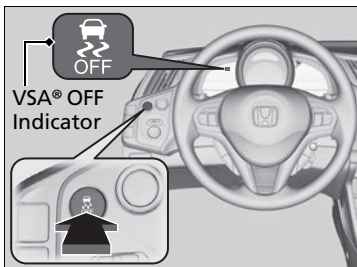
VSA® may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA® indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA® cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.


The main function of the VSA® system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

■ VSA® On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To turn the VSA® system on and off, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

VSA® will stop and the indicator will come on.

To turn it on again, press the  (VSA® OFF) button until you hear a beep.

VSA® is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.


▣ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

Without VSA®, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but it will not have VSA® traction and stability enhancement.

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with VSA® temporarily switched off.

When the VSA® system is off, the traction control system is also off. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA® off if you are not able to free it when the VSA® is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA® on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA® and traction control systems switched off.

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on or blinks, the VSA® system comes on automatically. In this case, you cannot turn the system off by pressing the  button.


You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

LaneWatch™*

LaneWatch is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side. A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicle, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.

1 The system activates when you:

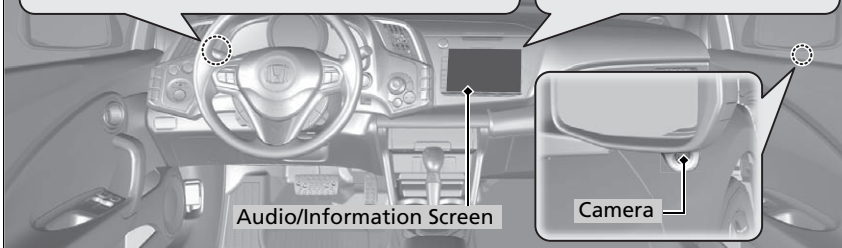

Move the turn signal lever to the passenger side. Press the LaneWatch button.



The system deactivates when you:

Pull the turn signal lever back. Press the LaneWatch button again.

2 The passenger side view display appears on the audio/information screen.



Audio/Information Screen

Camera

▶▶ LaneWatch™*

⚠ WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Over reliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

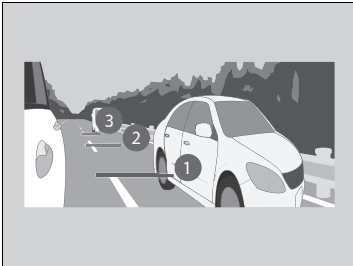
- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tires are over or under inflated.
- Your tires or wheels are of varied size or construction.

■ Customizing the LaneWatch settings

You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen.

- **Show with Turn Signal:** Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal light lever.
- **Display Time after Turn Signal Off:** Changes the remaining Lane Watch display time after you pull the turn signal lever back.
- **Reference Line:** Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch monitor.
- **Next Maneuver Pop up***: Selects whether a turn direction screen of the navigation system interrupts the LaneWatch display.
 - ▶ **Customized Features** P. 202

■ Reference Lines



Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line 1 (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line 3 farther away.

☒ LaneWatch™*

The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen look slightly different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the shift lever is in **[R]**.

For proper LaneWatch operation:

- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

☒ Reference Lines

The area around the reference line 1 (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines 1, 2 and 3 on the screen vary depending on road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

Consult a dealer if:

- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

* Not available on all models

U.S. models only

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tire, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tire while you are driving to determine if one or more tires are significantly under-inflated. This will cause the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on and a message to appear on the multi-information display.

TPMS Calibration

You must start TPMS calibration every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tires.
- Rotate the tires.
- Replace one or more tires.

Before calibrating the TPMS:

- Set the cold tire pressure in all four tires.
➤ **Checking Tires** P. 331

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.

Manual transmission models

- The shift lever is in **N**.

Continuously variable transmission models

- The shift lever is in **P**.

All models

- The power mode to ON.

▶▶ Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The system does not monitor the tires when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tire pressure and can trigger the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

Tire pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tire pressure indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The TPMS may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire.

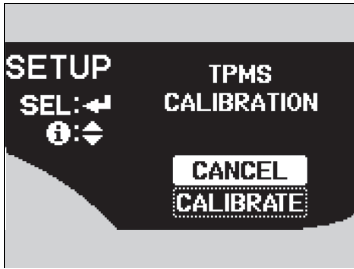
➤ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 331

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Snow chains are used.

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- A compact spare tire is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tires, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at calibration.
- Snow chains are used.



You can calibrate the system from the customized features on the multi-information display.

1. Press the **▲(i)/▼** button to select **CUSTOMIZE SETTINGS**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
 - ▶ **TPMS CALIBRATION** appears on the display.
 2. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.
 - ▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **CANCEL** or **CALIBRATE**.
 3. Press the **▲(i)/▼** button and select **CALIBRATE**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
 - ▶ **CALIBRATION STARTED** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.
- If the **CALIBRATION FAILED TO START** message appears, repeat steps 2-3.
 - The calibration process finishes automatically.

▣ TPMS Calibration

- TPMS cannot be calibrated if a compact spare tire is installed.
- The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 30-60 mph (48-97 km/h).
- During this period, if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tire pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the snow chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the TPMS.

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tires are installed, have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tires be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

U.S. models

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale



when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

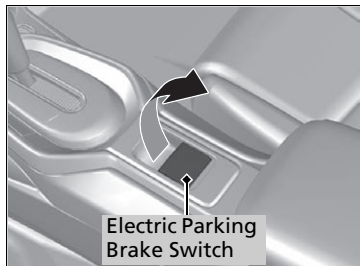
Brake System

■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. You can manually apply and release, or automatically release it.

■ Manual operations

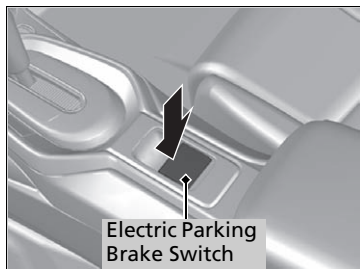
Use the electric parking brake switch to apply or release the brake. Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.



■ To apply manually

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

- ▶ The electric parking brake indicator comes on.
- ▶ When the power mode to OFF, the electric parking brake indicator comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch if the electric parking brake has been already applied.



■ To release manually

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
 - ▶ The electric parking brake indicator goes off.

⊠ Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system operating when you apply or release the parking brake, or set the power mode to OFF. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the battery goes dead.

➤ **When Stopped** P. 290

➤ **Jump Starting** P. 366

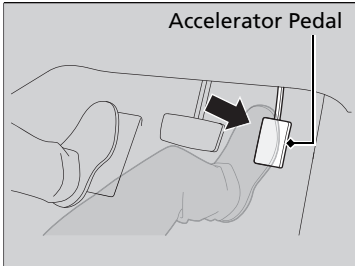
The parking brake is applied while the vehicle is moving with the electric parking brake switch being pulled.

■ **To release automatically**

Use the accelerator pedal to release the brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.

Continuously variable transmission models

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

- ▶ The electric parking brake indicator goes off.

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The shift lever is in any position other than **P** or **N**.

⊠ Parking Brake

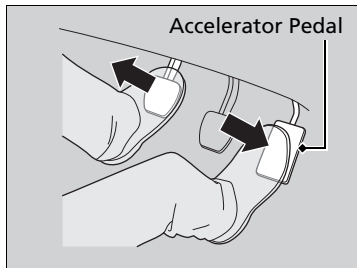
If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Electric parking brake system indicator
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator



Manual transmission models

Depressing the accelerator pedal while releasing the clutch pedal releases the parking brake.

Gently depress the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

- The electric parking brake indicator goes off.

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The shift lever is in any position other than **N**.
- The clutch pedal is fully depressed, and the clutch pedal is released after the accelerator pedal is gently depressed.

Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

➤ **Brake Assist System** P. 289

➤ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 288

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, this is caused by the brake wear indicator rubbing on the brake rotor and indicates that the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. If you hear only an occasional squeak or squeal when you initially apply the brake pedal, this may be normal and caused by high frequency vibration of the brake pads against the rotating brake disc.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear. With manual transmission use a lower gear for greater engine braking.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

When the vehicle speed goes under 6 mph (10 km/h), the ABS stops.

ⓘ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use an incorrect tire type and size.

When the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking is not affected, there is a possibility of the ABS not operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle. It only helps with steering control during hard braking.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more stopping distance than a vehicle without the ABS:

- When driving on rough road surfaces, including when driving on uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- When tire chains are installed.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

Brake Assist System

■ Brake Assist System

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.

Continuously variable transmission models

3. Move the shift lever from **D** to **P**.

Manual transmission models

3. Move the shift lever to **1** or **R**.
4. Turn off the engine.

Always confirm the electric parking brake is set, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

- ▶ The electric parking brake indicator goes off in about 15 seconds.

» Parking Your Vehicle

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

» When Stopped

Continuously variable transmission models

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

Multi-View Rear Camera

Models with navigation system

See the Navigation System Manual.

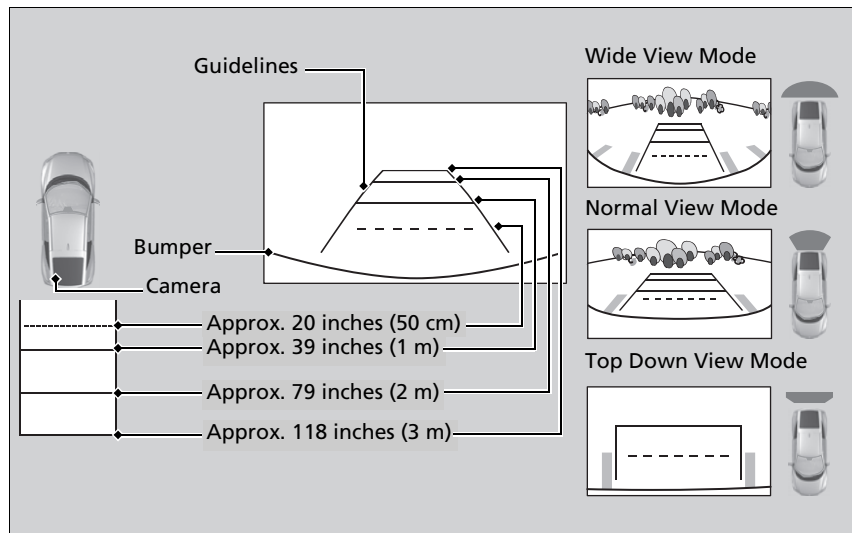
Models without navigation system

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view.

The display automatically changes to a rear view when the shift lever is moved to **R**.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 202

Fixed Guideline

On: Guidelines appear when you shift into **R**.

Off: Guidelines do not appear.

Dynamic Guidelines

On: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

Off: Guidelines do not move.

Continued

You can view three different camera angles on the rearview display.

Touch the appropriate icon to switch the angle.



: Wide view



: Normal view



: Top down view

If the last used viewing mode is Wide or Normal, the same mode is selected the next time you shift into **R**. If Top View is last used before you turned off the engine, Wide mode is selected next time you set the power mode to ON and shift to **R**.

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 87 or higher

Use of a lower octane gasoline can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

■ Top tier detergent gasoline

Because the level of detergency and additives in gasoline vary in the market, Honda endorses the use of “TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline” where available to help maintain the performance and reliability of your vehicle. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline meets a new gasoline standard jointly established by leading automotive manufacturers to meet the needs of today’s advanced engines.

⌘ Fuel Information

NOTICE

We recommend quality gasoline containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits. In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend the use of gasoline that does NOT contain harmful manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT, if such gasoline is available.

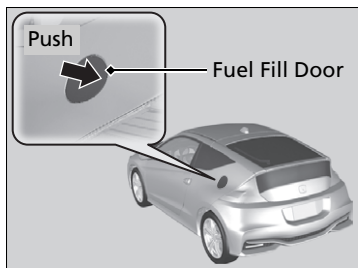
Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact a dealer for service. Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol. If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

Qualifying gasoline retailers will, in most cases, identify their gasoline as having met “TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline” standards at the retail location. This fuel is guaranteed to contain the proper level of detergent additives and be free of metallic additives. The proper level of detergent additives, and absence of harmful metallic additives in gasoline, help avoid build-up of deposits in your engine and emission control system.

For further important fuel-related information for your vehicle, or on information on gasoline that does not contain MMT, visit www.hondacars.com. In Canada, visit www.honda.ca for additional information on gasoline. For more information on top tier gasoline, visit www.toptiergas.com.

■ Fuel tank capacity: 10.6 US gal (40 liters)

How to Refuel



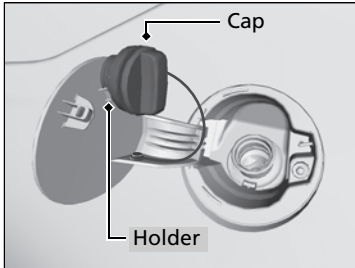
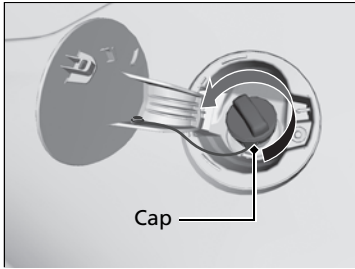
1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Press the area indicated by the arrow to release the fuel fill door. You will hear a click.

▶ How to Refuel

⚠ WARNING

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.



4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.

5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.

6. Insert the filler nozzle fully.

▶ When the tank is full, the fuel nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.

7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.

▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

How to Refuel

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

If the fuel nozzle keeps turning off when the tank is not full, there may be a problem with the pump's fuel vapor recovery system. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult a dealer.

Do not continue to add fuel after the nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

Improving Fuel Economy

Fuel economy depends on several conditions, including driving conditions, your driving habits, the condition of your vehicle, and loading. Depending on these and other conditions, you may or may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle in accordance with the messages displayed on the multi-information display.

- Use the recommended viscosity engine oil, displaying the API Certification Seal.
- Maintain the specified tire pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess cargo.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.



In Canada, posted fuel economy numbers are established following a simulated test. For more information on how this test is performed, please visit <http://oee.nrcan.gc.ca/>

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
 - **Fuses** P. 378
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle or use non-Honda components that can affect its handling, stability, and reliability.

Overall vehicle performance can be affected. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets federal, state, province, territory, and local regulations.

Accessories and Modifications

⚠ WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance	300
Safety When Performing Maintenance	301
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance	
Service	302

Maintenance Minder™

Maintenance Under the Hood

Maintenance Items Under the Hood	307
Opening the Hood	308
Recommended Engine Oil	309
Oil Check	310
Adding Engine Oil	311
Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter ..	312

Engine Coolant	314
Transmission Fluid	316
Brake/Clutch Fluid	318
Refilling Window Washer Fluid	319
Replacing Light Bulbs	320
Checking and Maintaining Wiper	
Blades	328
Checking and Maintaining Tires	
Checking Tires	331
Tire and Loading Information Label ..	332
Tire Labeling	332
DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles) ..	334
Wear Indicators	336

Tire Service Life	336
Tire and Wheel Replacement	337
Tire Rotation	338
Winter Tires	339
12-Volt Battery	340
Remote Transmitter Care	
Replacing the Button Battery	342
Climate Control System Maintenance	343
Cleaning	
Interior Care	344
Exterior Care	346

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. (Note, however, that service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect.)

Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the continuously variable transmission fluid level monthly.
 - **Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid** P. 316
- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
 - **Brake/Clutch Fluid** P. 318
- Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
 - **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 331
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
 - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 320
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
 - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 328

Inspection and Maintenance

U.S. models

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individuals using parts that are “certified” to EPA standards.

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the maintenance main items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the multi-information display.

➤ **Maintenance Service Items** P. 305

If you want to perform complex maintenance tasks that require more skills and tools, you can purchase a subscription to the Service Express website at www.techinfo.honda.com.

➤ **Authorized Manuals** P. 397

If you want to perform maintenance yourself, make sure that you have the necessary tools and skills first. After performing maintenance, update the records in the separate maintenance booklet.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery and all High Voltage system related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the hood.
 - ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
 - ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
 - ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
 - ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
 - ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.
- Do not touch the IMA battery and wiring (orange).

⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations according to the schedules in this owner's manual.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

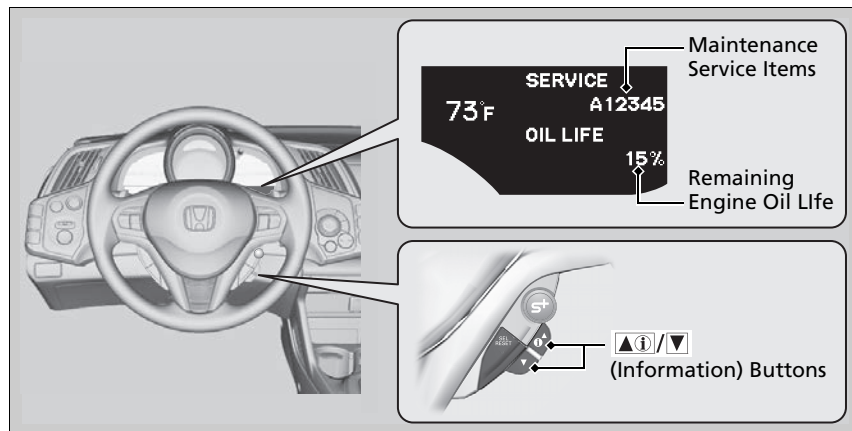
If the engine oil life is less than 15%, you will see the Maintenance Minder messages appear on the multi-information display every time you set the power mode to ON. The messages notify you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

To Use Maintenance Minder™

■ Displaying the Engine Oil Life and Maintenance Items

Maintenance items, which should be serviced at the same time that you replace the engine oil, appear on the multi-information display. You can view them on the **engine oil life** screen when the remaining engine oil life is under 15 percent.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the  (information) button repeatedly until the engine oil life appears on the multi-information display.



▣ Displaying the Engine Oil Life and Maintenance Items

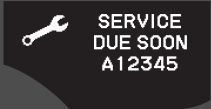


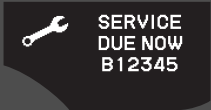






Based on the engine operating conditions, the remaining engine oil life is calculated and displayed as a percentage.

Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)	Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)
100	100 to 91
90	90 to 81
80	80 to 71
70	70 to 61
60	60 to 51
50	50 to 41
40	40 to 31
30	30 to 21
20	20 to 16
15	15 to 11
10	10 to 6
5	5 to 1
0	0

There is a list of maintenance main and sub items you can view on the multi-information display.

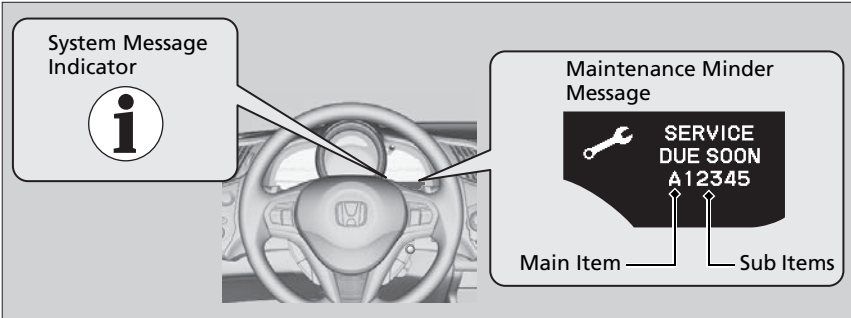
▣ **Maintenance Service Items** P. 305

Maintenance Minder Messages on the Multi-Information Display

Maintenance Message	Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information
<p>SERVICE DUE SOON</p> 	<p>15 %</p> 	<p>The remaining engine oil life is 15 to 6 percent. Once you switch the display by pressing the /▼ button, this message will go off.</p>	<p>The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced soon.</p>
<p>SERVICE DUE NOW</p> 	<p>5 %</p> 	<p>The remaining engine oil life is 5 to 1 percent. Press the /▼ button to switch to another display.</p>	<p>The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.</p>
<p>SERVICE PAST DUE</p> 	<p>Negative Distance U.S.</p>  <p>Canada</p> 	<p>The engine oil has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). Press the /▼ button to switch to another display.</p>	<p>The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately.</p>

The system message indicator (ⓘ) comes on along with the Maintenance Minder message.

Maintenance Service Items



▣ Maintenance Service Items

- Independent of the Maintenance Minder information, replace the brake fluid every 3 years.
- Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
- Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace engine oil*1
B	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter • Inspect front and rear brakes • Check parking brake adjustment • Inspect tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots • Inspect suspension components • Inspect driveshaft boots • Inspect brake hoses and lines (Including ABS/VSA) • Inspect all fluid levels and condition of fluids • Inspect exhaust system# • Inspect fuel lines and connections# • Check expiration date for Tire Repair Kit bottle

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rotate tires
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace air cleaner element*2 • Replace dust and pollen filter*3 • Inspect drive belt
3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace transmission fluid
4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace spark plugs • Inspect valve clearance
5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace engine coolant

*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
 #: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

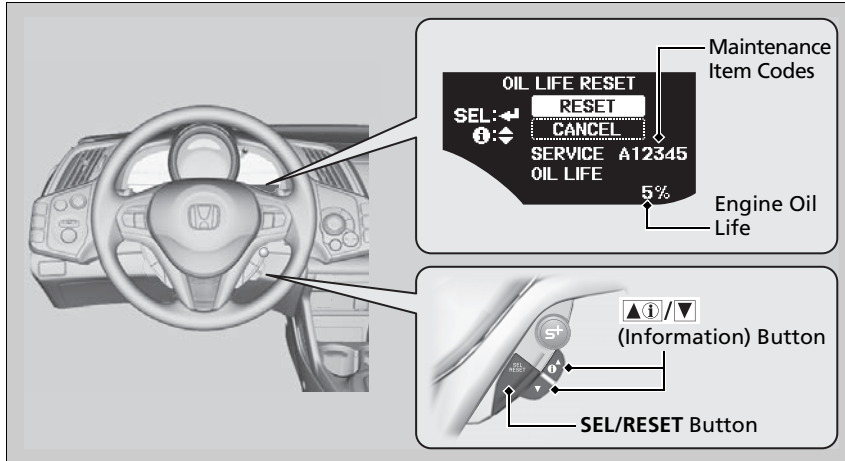
*1: If a message **SERVICE** does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
 *2: If you drive primarily in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

Continued

Maintenance

■ Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil life display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Set the power mode to ON.
 2. Display the engine oil life by repeatedly pressing the **▲i/▼** button.
 3. Press and hold the **SEL/RESET** button for 10 seconds or more.
 - ▶ The oil life reset mode is displayed on the multi-information display.
 4. Select **RESET** with the **▲i/▼** button, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
 - ▶ The displayed maintenance items disappear, and the engine oil life display returns to **100 %**.
- To cancel the oil life reset mode, select **CANCEL**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

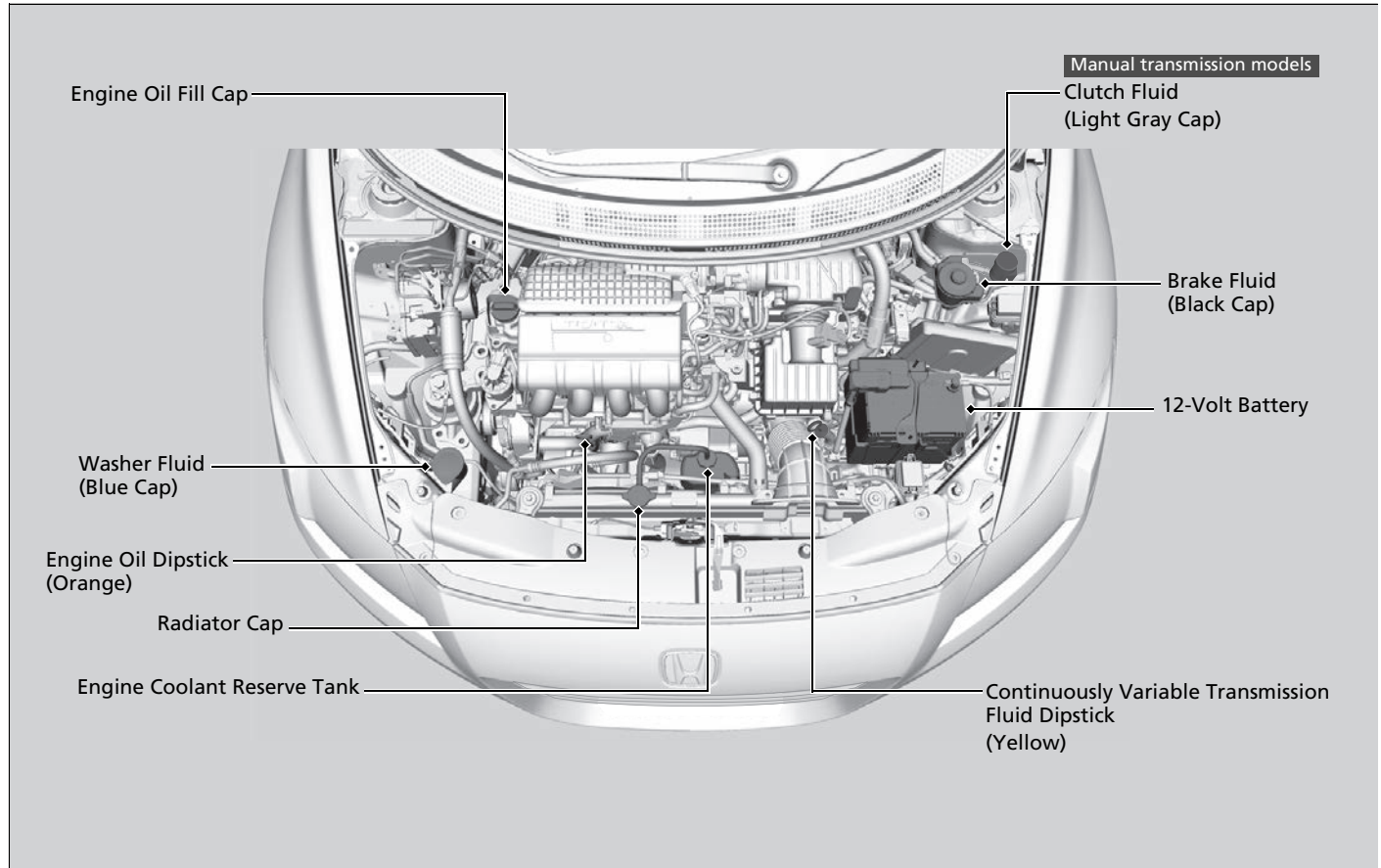
▶▶ Resetting the Display

NOTICE

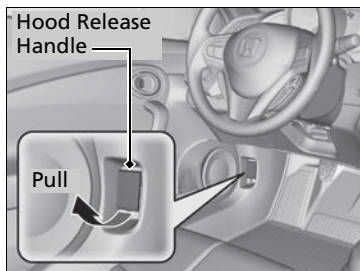
Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

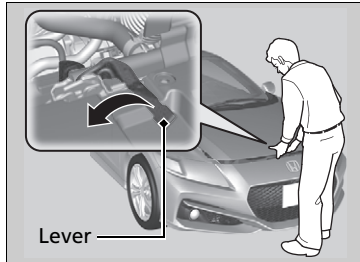
Maintenance Items Under the Hood



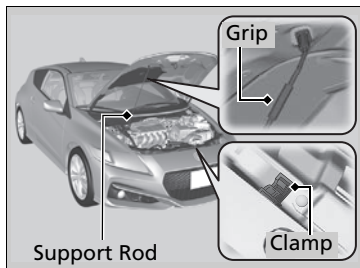
Opening the Hood



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the hood release handle under the lower left corner of the dashboard.
 - The hood will pop up slightly.



3. Slide the hood latch lever in the center of the hood to release the lock mechanism, and open the hood.



4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the hood.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the hood. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 12 inches (30 cm) and let the hood close.

►► Opening the Hood

NOTICE

Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised. The hood will strike the wipers, and may damage either the hood or the wipers.

When closing the hood, check that the hood is securely latched.

If the hood latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Do not open the hood while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.

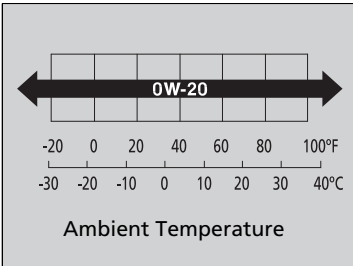
Recommended Engine Oil

- **Genuine Honda Motor Oil**
- **Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil with an API Certification Seal on the container.**



Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.



Use a Genuine Honda Motor Oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.

■ Synthetic oil

You may also use synthetic motor oil if it is labeled with the API Certification Seal and is the specified viscosity grade.

▣ Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

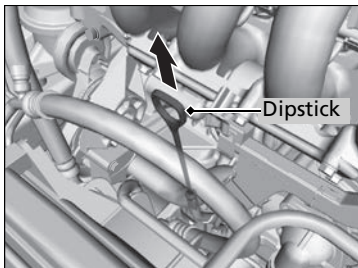
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Oil Check

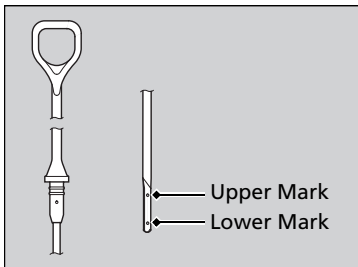
We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

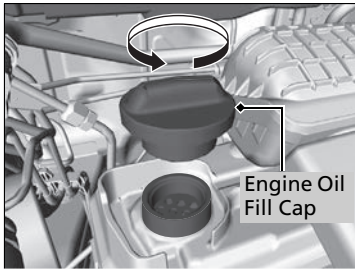


4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil being careful not to overfill.

Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

⚠ Adding Engine Oil

If any oil spills, wipe it up immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

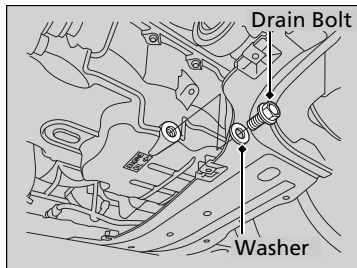
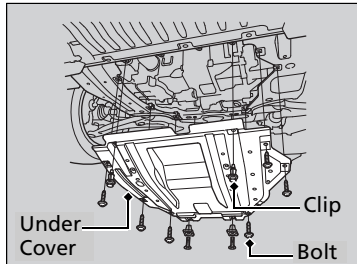
NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.

Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You must change the engine oil and oil filter regularly in order to maintain the engine's lubrication. The engine may be damaged if they are not changed regularly.

Change the oil and filter in accordance with the maintenance message on the multi-information display.

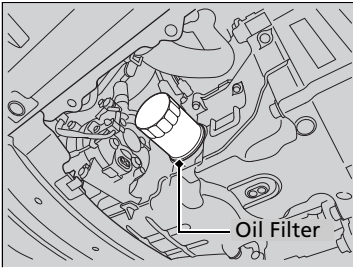


1. Remove the engine under cover.
2. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, and then turn the engine off.
3. Open the hood and remove the engine oil fill cap.
4. Remove the bolts and clips on the undercarriage and remove the cover.
5. Remove the drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine, and drain the oil into a suitable container.

► Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

NOTICE

You may damage the environment if you do not dispose of the oil in a suitable way. If you are changing the oil by yourself, appropriately dispose of the used oil. Put the oil in a sealed container and take it to a recycling center. Do not throw the oil away into a garbage can or onto the ground.



6. Remove the oil filter and dispose of the remaining oil.
7. Check that the filter gasket is not stuck to the engine contact surface.
 - If it is stuck, you must detach it.
8. Wipe away dirt and dust adhering to the contact surface of the engine block, and install a new oil filter.
 - Apply a light coat of new engine oil to the oil filter gasket.
9. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt.
 - Tightening torque:
29 lbf·ft (39 N·m, 4.0 kgf·m)
10. Pour the recommended engine oil into the engine.
 - Engine oil change capacity (including filter):
3.8 US qt (3.6 L)
11. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap securely and start the engine.
12. Run the engine for a few minutes, and then check that there is no leak from the drain bolt or oil filter.
13. Stop the engine, wait for three minutes, and then check the oil level on the dipstick.
 - If necessary, add more engine oil.

✘ Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You will need a special wrench to replace the oil filter. You can buy this wrench from a dealer.

When installing the new oil filter, follow the instructions supplied with the oil filter.

Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The low oil pressure indicator should go off within five seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine, and check your work.

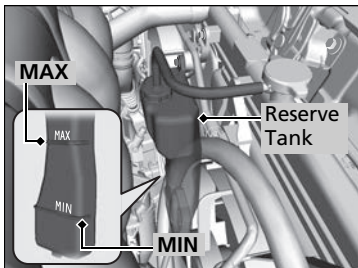
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

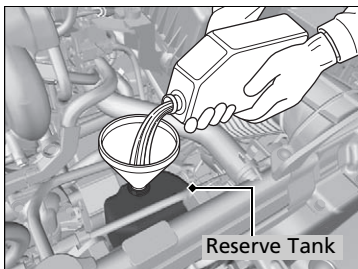
This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank



1. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.



2. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

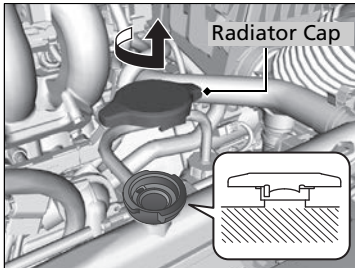
NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below -22°F (-30°C) are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult a dealer for more information.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Radiator



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap counterclockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system. Do not push the cap down when turning.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap counterclockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.
6. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.

Radiator

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

NOTICE

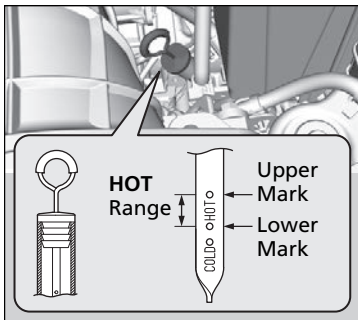
Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Check the fluid level when the engine is at normal operating temperature.



1. Park on level ground, and start the engine.
2. Wait until the radiator fan starts and then turn off the engine.
 - ▶ Perform step 3 after waiting for about 60 seconds (less than 90 seconds).
3. Remove the dipstick (yellow) from the transmission and wipe it with a clean cloth.
4. Insert the dipstick all the way back into the transmission securely, as shown in the image.
5. Remove the dipstick and check the fluid level.
 - ▶ It should be between the upper and lower marks in the **HOT** range.
6. If the level is below the lower mark, add fluid into the dipstick hole to bring it to the level between the upper and lower marks, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

▶▶ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission. Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid is not covered by Honda's new vehicle warranty.

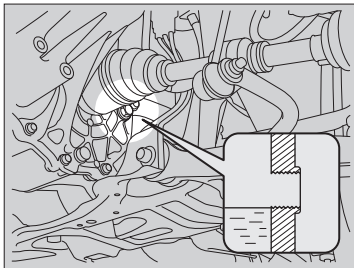
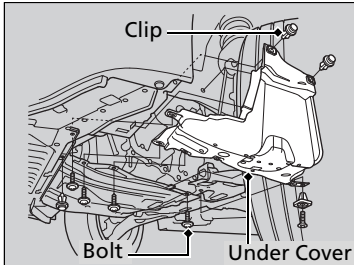
NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Manual Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF)

Check the fluid level when the engine is at normal operating temperature.



1. Park the vehicle on level ground.
2. Remove the bolts with a wrench and clips with a flat-tip screwdriver, then carefully remove the under cover.
3. Remove the transmission filler bolt and washer.
Carefully feel inside the bolt hole with your fingers.
 - Check if the fluid level is up to the edge of the bolt hole.
4. If the fluid level is not up to the edge of the bolt hole, add Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF) until it runs out of the hole.
5. Put a new washer on the filler bolt, then reinstall the filler bolt.
 - Tightening torque:
33 lbf·ft (44 N·m, 4.5 kgf·m)
6. Reinstall the under cover with the bolts and clips.

Manual Transmission Fluid

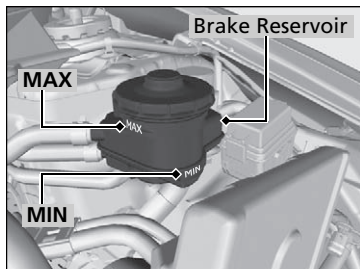
If Honda MTF is not available, you may use the API certified SAE 0 W-20 or 5 W-20 viscosity motor oil as a temporary measure.
Replace with MTF as soon as possible. Motor oil does not contain the proper additives for the transmission and continued use can cause decreased shifting performance and lead to transmission damage.

Brake/Clutch Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3

Use the same fluid for both the brakes and clutch.

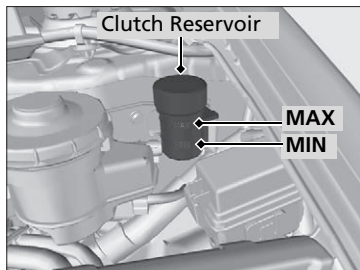
■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

Manual transmission models

■ Checking the Clutch Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

⌘ Checking the Brake Fluid

NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

If the specified brake fluid is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid from a sealed container as a temporary replacement.

Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the longevity of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

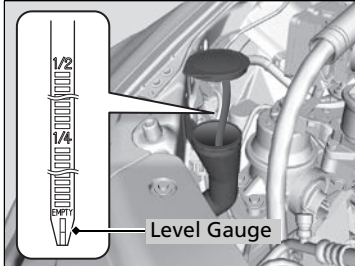
⌘ Checking the Clutch Fluid

If the clutch fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect for leaks or an excessively worn clutch plate as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Models with washer fluid level gauge

Check the amount of window washer fluid using the washer fluid level gauge on the cap.



If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Models with washer level sensor

If the washer fluid is low, a message appears on the multi-information display.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the washer reservoir.

Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the washer pump.

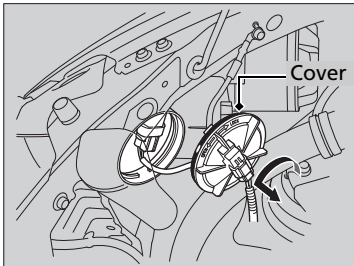
Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

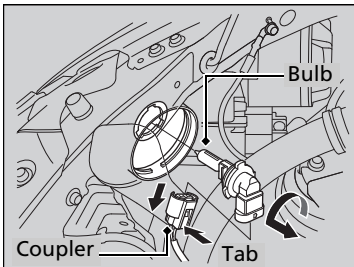
High beam headlight: 60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)

Low beam headlight: 55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)*
35W (D4S for high voltage discharge)*

High Beam Headlight



1. Remove the cover by rotating it to the left.



2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
3. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
4. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it to the right.
5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Headlight Bulbs

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit.

Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

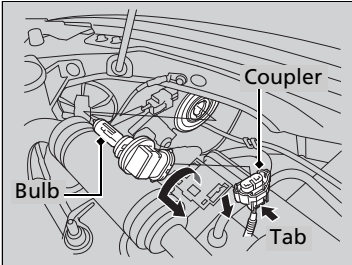
The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

■ Low Beam Headlights (High Voltage Discharge Type) *

High voltage can remain in the circuit for a long period of time after the light is switched off. Do not attempt to inspect or replace the high voltage discharge type bulbs yourself. Ask a dealer to inspect and replace low beam headlights.

■ Low Beam Headlights (Halogen Headlights) *



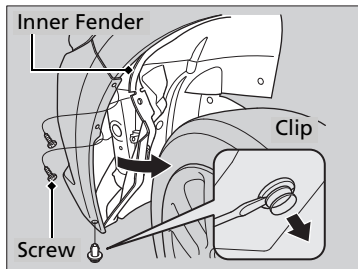
1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it to the right.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

* Not available on all models

Fog Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Fog Lights: 35 W (H8 for halogen bulb type)



1. Turn the steering wheel all the way to the opposite side from the fog light being replaced.

Passenger side: Turn the steering wheel to the left.

Driver side: Turn the steering wheel to the right.

2. Remove the clip and screws, and pull the inner fender back.

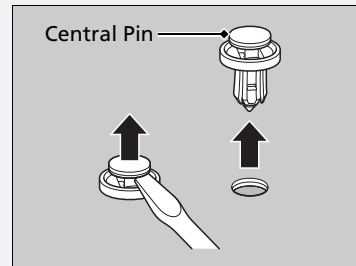
►► Fog Light Bulbs*

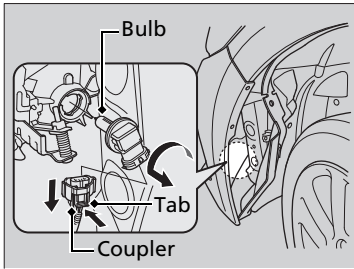
NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the central pin to remove the clip.

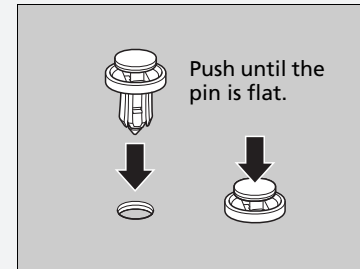




3. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
4. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
5. Insert a new bulb into the light assembly and turn it to the right.
6. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

☒ Fog Light Bulbs*

Insert the clip with the central pin raised, and push until it is flat.

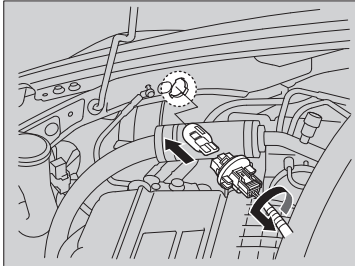


* Not available on all models

Front Turn Signal/Parking/Side Marker Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Front Turn Signal/Parking/Side Marker Light: 28W/8 W



1. Turn the socket to the left and remove it, then remove the old bulb.
2. Insert a new bulb.

Models with high voltage discharge headlights

Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Side turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

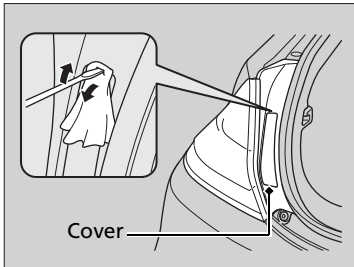
Back-Up Light, Rear Turn Signal Light and Rear Side Marker Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

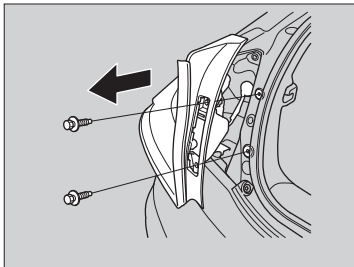
Back-Up Light: 16 W

Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)

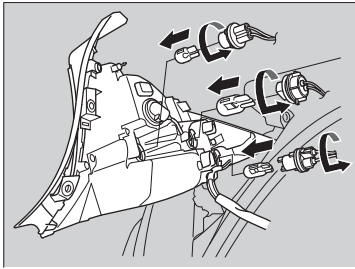
Rear Side Marker Light: 3 CP



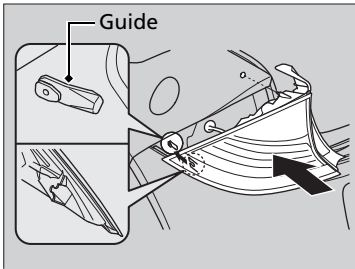
1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
 - ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the bolts.
3. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.



4. Turn the socket to the left and remove it, then remove the old bulb.
5. Insert a new bulb.



6. Reinstall the light assembly by sliding it on to the guide on the body.

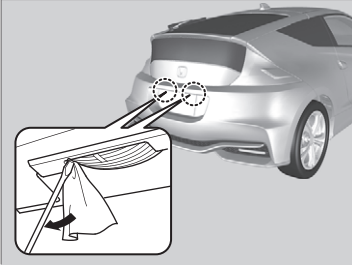
Brake/Taillights

Brake/rear taillights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

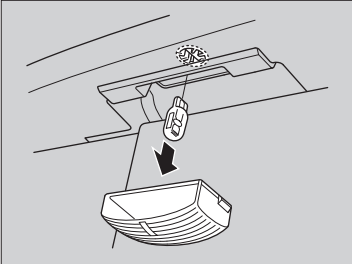
Rear License Plate Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Rear License Plate Light: 5 W



1. Remove the lens by prying on the edge of the lens using a flat-tip screwdriver.
 - ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

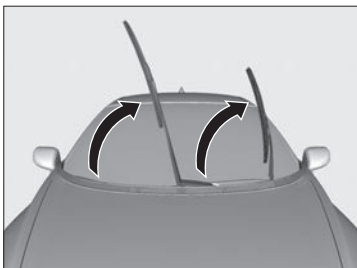
High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

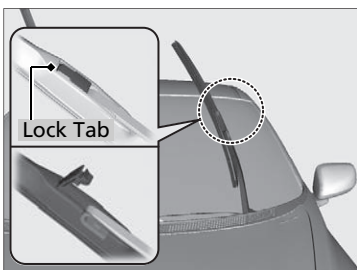
Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

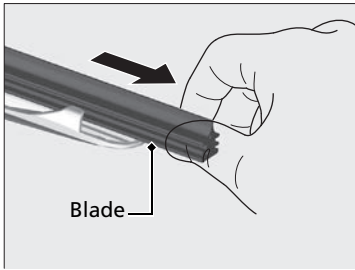


2. Push the lock tab up.
3. Slide the blade holder from the wiper arm.

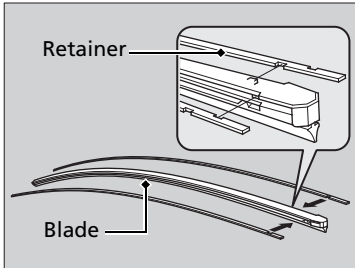
Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

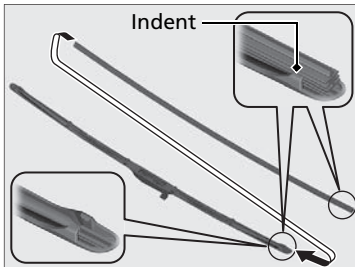
Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the windshield.



- 4.** Slide the wiper blade out from its holder by pulling from the end of the blade having the molded-in stopper block.

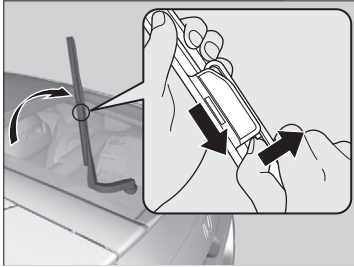


- 5.** Remove the retainers from the old rubber blade, and mount to a new rubber blade.
 ► Correctly align the rubber protrusion and the retainer grooves.

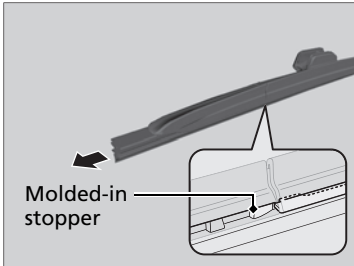


- 6.** Pull the new wiper blade onto the holder from the end not having the stopper block.
 ► The tabs on the holder should fit in the indents of the wiper blade.
- 7.** Slide the wiper holder onto the wiper arm, then push down the lock tab.
- 8.** Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

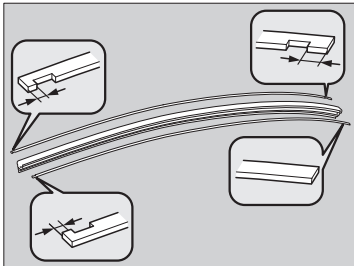
Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Raise the wiper arm off.
2. Slide the blade holder from the wiper arm by pushing the lock tab while pulling the holder toward the base of the wiper arm.



3. Slide the wiper blade out from its holder by pulling from the end of the blade having the molded-in stopper.



4. Remove the retainer from wiper blade and mount it to a new rubber blade.
5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.
 - ▶ Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the rear window.

Checking Tires

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tires provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label or specification's page for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tires make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tires. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tire gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tires, including the spare*. Even tires in good condition can lose 1 to 2 psi (10 to 20 kPa, 0.1 to 0.2 kgf/cm²) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tires and valve stems.

Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tire if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

➔ **Wear Indicators** P. 336

- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

* Not available on all models

☒ Checking Tires

⚠ WARNING

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tire pressure can be as much as 4–6 psi (30–40 kPa, 0.3–0.4 kgf/cm²) higher than if checked when cold.

Have a dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tires and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

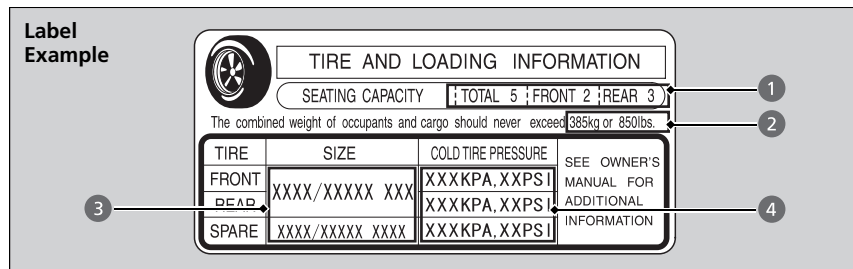
U.S. models only

Whenever tire pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the TPMS.

➔ **Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)**
P. 280

Tire and Loading Information Label

The label attached to the driver’s doorjamb provides necessary tire and loading information.

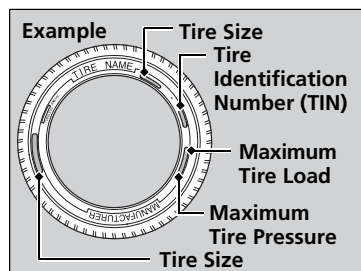


▶▶ Tire and Loading Information Label

The tire and loading information label attached to the driver’s doorjamb contains:

- 1 The number of people your vehicle can carry.
- 2 The total weight your vehicle can carry. Do not exceed this weight.
- 3 The original tire sizes for front, rear, and spare.
- 4 The proper cold tire pressure for front, rear, and spare.

Tire Labeling



The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described below.

▶▶ Tire Size

Following is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

P195/55 R16 86V

P: Vehicle type (P indicates passenger vehicle).

195: Tire width in millimeters.

55: Aspect ratio (the tire’s section height as a percentage of its width).

R: Tire construction code (R indicates radial).

16: Rim diameter in inches.

86: Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).

V: Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

■ Tire Size

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size.

■ Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the example in the side column. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

■ Glossary of Tire Terminology

Cold Tire Pressure – The tire air pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Load Rating – Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.

Maximum Inflation Pressure – The maximum tire air pressure that the tire can hold.

Maximum Load Rating – Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Recommended Inflation Pressure – The cold tire inflation pressure recommended by the manufacturer.

Treadwear Indicators (TWI) – Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread.

☒ Tire Identification Number (TIN)

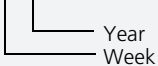
DOT B97R FW6X 2209

DOT: This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

B97R: Manufacturer's identification mark.

FW6X: Tire type code.

22 09: Date of manufacture.



 Year
 Week

DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

■ Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

■ Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

☒ Uniform Tire Quality Grading

For example:

Treadwear 200
Traction AA
Temperature A

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

■ Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

■ Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

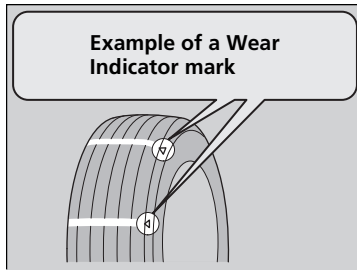
⊠ Traction

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

⊠ Temperature

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) shallower than elsewhere on the tire. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tire.

Worn out tires have poor traction on wet roads.

Tire Service Life

The life of your tires is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tires are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tires reach five years old. All tires should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tire and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tires with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall). Using tires of a different size or construction can cause the ABS and vehicle stability assist (VSA®) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tires in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

ⓘ Tire and Wheel Replacement

⚠ WARNING

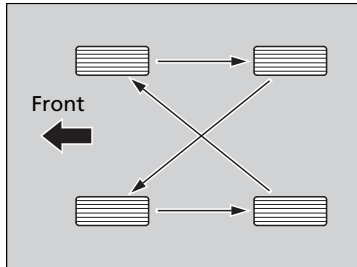
Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

Tire Rotation

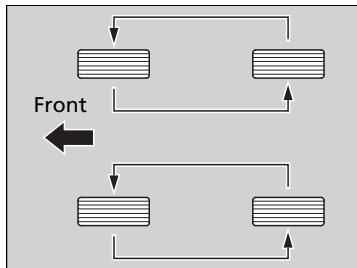
Rotating tires according to the maintenance messages on the multi-information display helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tire life.

■ Tires without rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

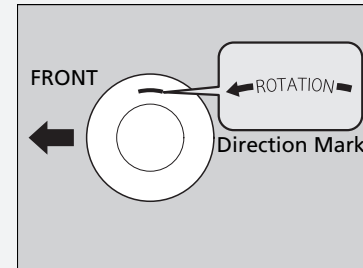
■ Tires with rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

▶▶ Tire Rotation

Tires with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tires should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



Winter Tires

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount all season marked **M+S** tires, snow tires, or tire chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tire chains, snow tires, or all season tires when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tires:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tires.
- Mount the tires to all four wheels.

For tire chains:

- Install them on the front tires only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Models with P195/55 R16 tires

Cable-type: SCC Radial Chain SC1030

Models with 205/45 R17 tires ^{*1}

Not recommended to use any type of chains

*1: On 205/45R17 tires, you cannot install any type of tire chains. If you have to use tire chains, replace the original tires with the 195/55R16 tires.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

⚠ Winter Tires

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

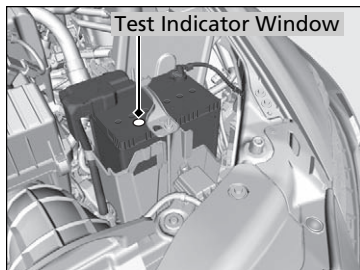
NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tire chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tires, be aware that these tires are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Checking the 12-Volt Battery



Check the battery condition monthly. Look at the test indicator window and check the terminals for corrosion.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.
 - **Reactivating the audio system** P. 163
- The clock resets.
 - **Clock** P. 108
- The navigation system* is disabled. A PIN code will be required.
 - **Refer to the navigation system manual**

12-Volt Battery

⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

When conducting any battery maintenance, wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do it.

WARNING: Battery post, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds.
Wash your hands after handling.

The test indicator's color information is on the battery.

Charging the 12-Volt Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

⚠ 12-Volt Battery

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Please consult a dealer for more information.

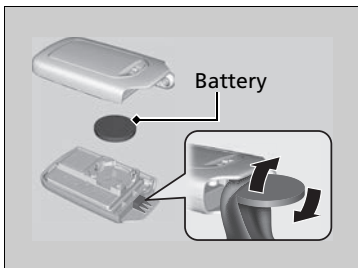
Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.
2. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
 - ▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
 - ▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the smart entry remote.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



Replacing the Button Battery

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

Dust and Pollen Filter

The climate control system is equipped with a dust and pollen filter that collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air. The Maintenance Minder™ messages will let you know when to replace the filter.

We recommend that you replace the dust and pollen filter sooner when using your vehicle in areas with high concentrations of dust.

☒ Dust and Pollen Filter

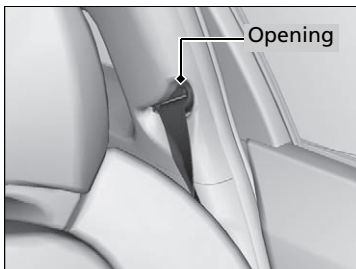
If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced. Please contact a dealer for replacement.

Interior Care

Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt. Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

■ Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

▣ Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discoloration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles. Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or gasoline.

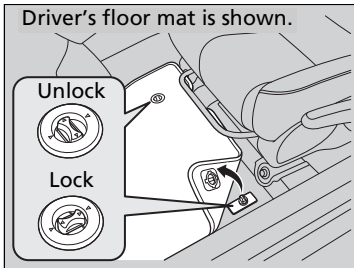
After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them off using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

▣ Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Floor Mats



The driver's floor mat hooks over the floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently. Pay close attention to the pleats and seams. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a 90% water and 10% neutral soap solution. Then buff it with a clean, dry cloth. Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.

Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors.

* Not available on all models

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive.

Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

■ Using an Automated Car Wash

Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.

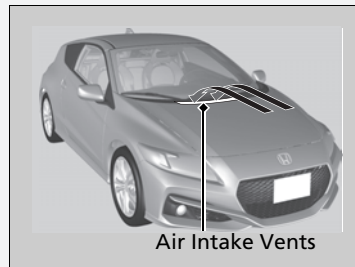
- Fold in the door mirrors.

■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

🔍 Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



Do not spray water onto the fuel fill door directly. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.

■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get gasoline, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Maintaining Aluminum Wheels

Aluminum is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. Use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away promptly. Be careful not to use harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners) or a stiff brush. They can damage the clear coat of the aluminum alloy wheels that helps keep the aluminum from corroding and tarnishing.

☒ Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe up spills immediately.

☒ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools

Types of Tools 350

If a Tire Goes Flat

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire 351

Engine Does Not Start

Checking the Engine 362

If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is

Weak 364

Emergency Engine Stop 365

Jump Starting 366

Shift Lever Does Not Move 369

Overheating

How to Handle Overheating 370

Indicator, Coming On/Blinking

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On 372

If the 12V Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On 373

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks 374

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks 375

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On 375

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on 376

If the IMA Indicator Comes On 377

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks 377

Fuses

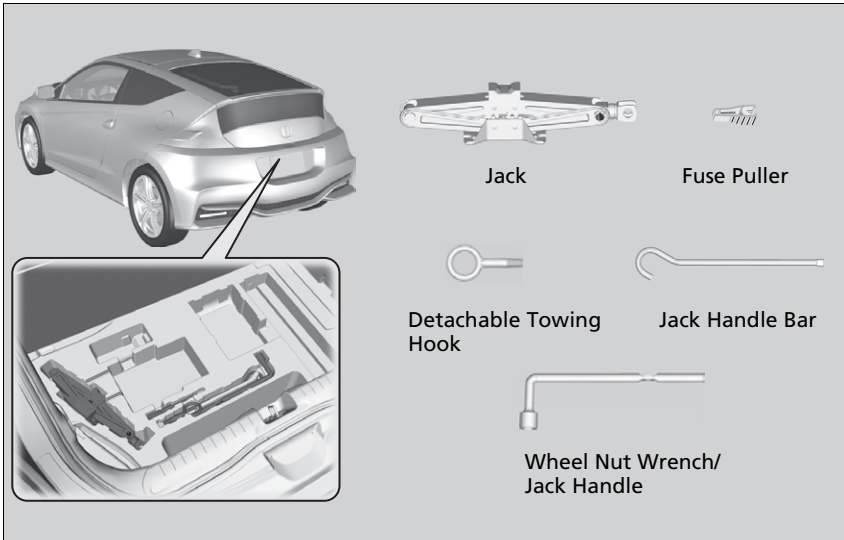
Fuse Locations 378

Inspecting and Changing Fuses 382

Emergency Towing 383

When You Cannot Open the Hatch 385

Types of Tools



Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the cargo area.

If a Tire Goes Flat

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire

This vehicle is not equipped with a spare tire. If the tire has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tire only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tire repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

If a tire goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, and non-slippery surface, and apply the parking brake.

Continuously variable transmission models

2. Move the shift lever to **P**.

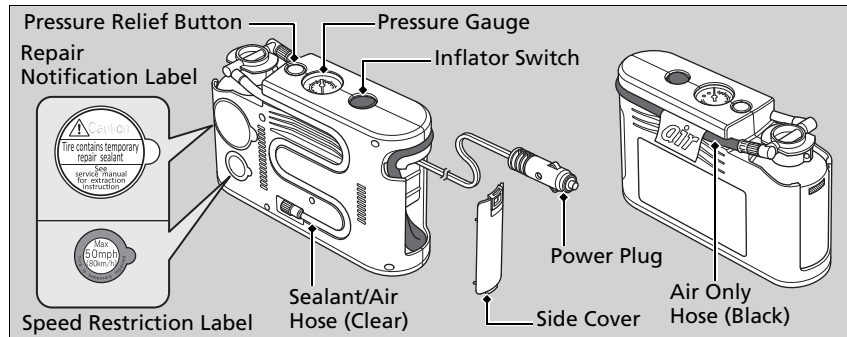
Manual transmission models

2. Move the shift lever to **R**.

All models

3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to OFF.

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire



Continued

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

- The tire sealant has expired.
- More than one tire is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 3/16 inch (4 mm).
- The tire side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the tire area.



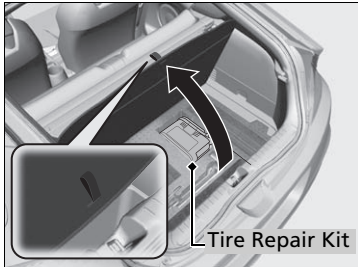
When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 3/16 inch (4 mm)	Yes
Larger than 3/16 inch (4 mm)	No

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tire extremely under inflated.
- The tire bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

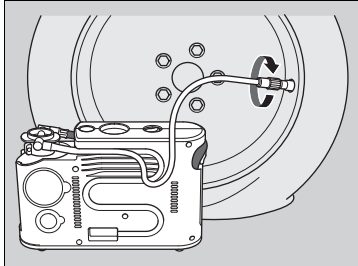
Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tire. If you remove it from the tire, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

NOTICE

Do not use a puncture-repairing agent other than the one provided in the kit that came with your vehicle. If a different agent is used, you may permanently damage the tire pressure sensor.



1. Pull the strap and take the kit out of the case.

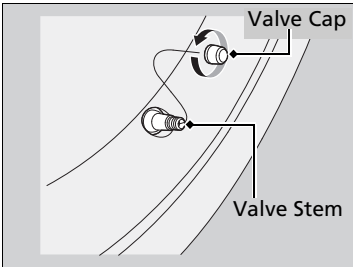


2. Place the kit upright, on flat ground near the flat tire, and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

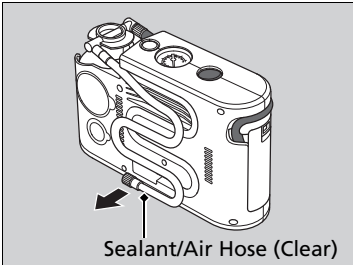
▶▶ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.

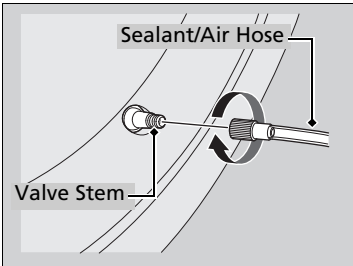
Injecting Sealant and Air



1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem.



2. Remove the sealant/air hose (clear) from the packaging.



3. Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tire valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠ WARNING

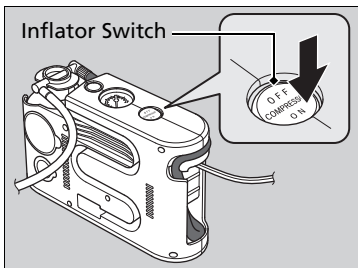
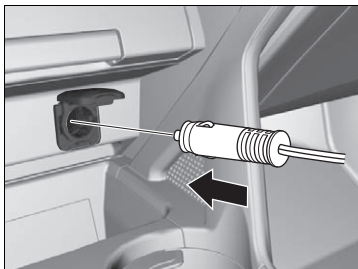
Tire sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it up for five minutes before using.

The sealant can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe away any spills immediately.



4. Remove the side cover, then pull out the power plug.
5. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
 - ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
6. Start the engine.
 - ▶ Keep the engine running while injecting sealant and air.
7. Press the inflator switch to turn on the compressor.
 - ▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tire.
8. Continue to add air after the sealant injection is complete.
9. After the air pressure reaches the required pressure, turn off the inflator switch.
 - ▶ To check the pressure, occasionally turn off the compressor and read the gauge.

⚠ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 66

▶▶ Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colorless, odorless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tire repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The accessory power socket and compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

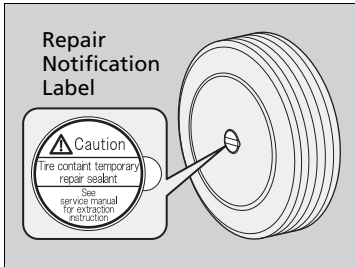
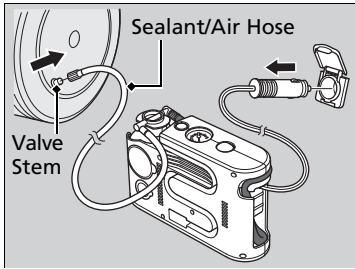
There is an accessory power socket in the front console panel.

▶▶ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 149

Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tire is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.

See the driver's doorjamb or the specifications in this manual for the required air pressure.

▶▶ **Specifications** P. 388



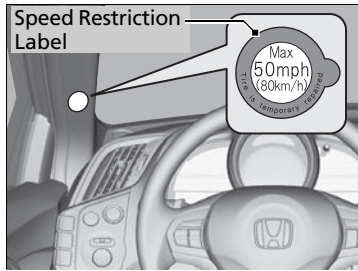
10. Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
 - ▶ Handle the compressor and the power plug carefully. They may be hot in operation.
11. Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tire valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
12. Press the pressure relief button until the gauge returns to 0 psi (0 kPa).
13. Apply the repair notification label to the flat surface of the wheel.
 - ▶ The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

✘ Injecting Sealant and Air

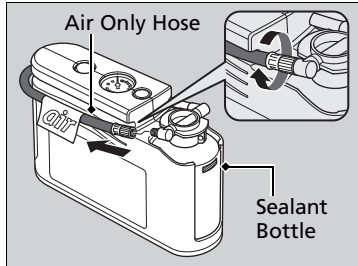
If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tire may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

See a Honda dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.

■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tire



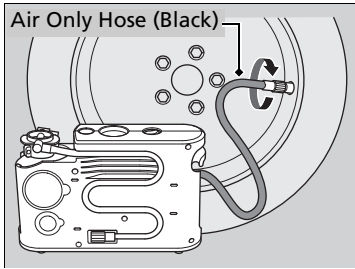
1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.
 - ▶ Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.



4. Unscrew the air only hose (black) to remove it from the sealant bottle.

▶▶ Distributing the Sealant in the Tire

Stop and recheck the air pressure after every 10 minutes of driving as necessary until you reach the nearest service station where you should have the tire permanently repaired or replaced.



5. Recheck the air pressure using the air only hose (black) on the compressor.

▶ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

➤ **Inflating An Under-inflated Tire**
P. 359

6. If the air pressure is

- Less than 19 psi (130 kPa):
Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.

➤ **Emergency Towing** P. 383

Models with P195/55R16 86V tires

- 30 psi (210 kPa) or more:

Models with 205/45R17 84W tires

- front: 32 psi (220 kPa)/rear: 30 psi (210 kPa) or more:
Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

➤ **Distributing the Sealant in the Tire**

See the driver's doorjamb or the specifications in this manual for the required air pressure.

➤ **Specifications** P. 388

⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colorless, odorless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

- ▶ If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minutes driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.

Models with P195/55R16 86V tires

- Greater than 19 psi (130 kPa), but less than 30 psi (210 kPa):
Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tire until the tire pressure reaches 30 psi (210 kPa).

Models with 205/45R17 84W tires

- Greater than 19 psi (130 kPa), but less than front: 32 psi (220 kPa)/rear: 30 psi (210 kPa):
Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tire until the tire pressure reaches front: 32 psi (220 kPa)/rear: 30 psi (210 kPa).

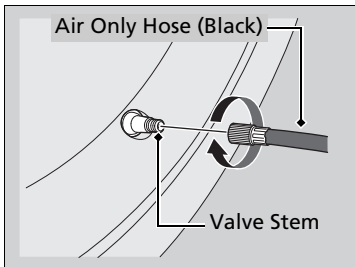
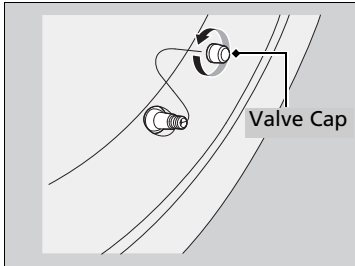
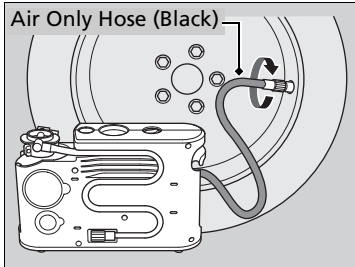
➤ **Inflating An Under-inflated Tire P. 359**

Then drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

- ▶ You should repeat this procedures as long as the air pressure is within this range.
7. Press the pressure relief button until the gauge returns to 0 psi (0 kPa).
 8. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

■ Inflating An Under-inflated Tire

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tire.



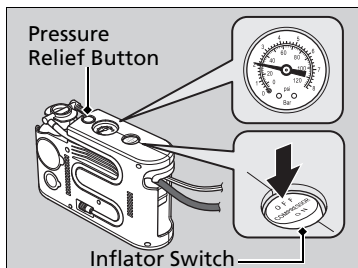
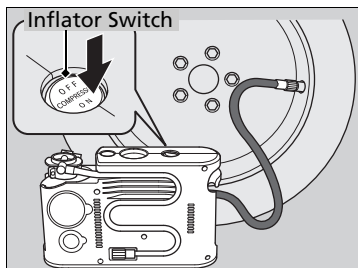
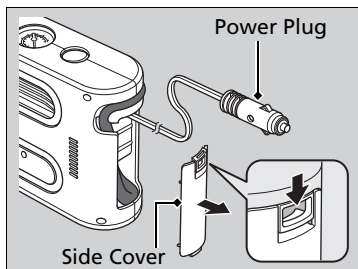
1. Pull the strap on the cargo area floor lid and open the lid.
 - ▣ **Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire** P. 351
2. Remove the kit from the case.
3. Place the kit upright on flat ground near the tire to be inflated, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
4. Unscrew the air only hose (black) to remove it from the sealant bottle.
5. Remove the valve cap.

6. Attach the air only hose onto the tire valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

▣ Inflating An Under-inflated Tire

NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tire repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The accessory power socket and compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.



7. Remove the side cover, then pull out the power plug.
8. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
 - ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
9. Start the engine.
 - ▶ Keep the engine running while injecting air.

⚠ Carbon Monoxide Gas P. 66

10. Press the inflator switch to turn on the compressor.
 - ▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tire.
11. Inflate the tire to the specified air pressure.
12. Turn off the inflator switch.
 - ▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
 - ▶ If overinflated, press the pressure relief button.
13. Unplug the compressor from the accessory power socket.
14. Unscrew the air only hose from the tire valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
15. Press the pressure relief button until the gauge returns to 0 psi (0 kPa).
16. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

▶▶ Inflating An Under-inflated Tire

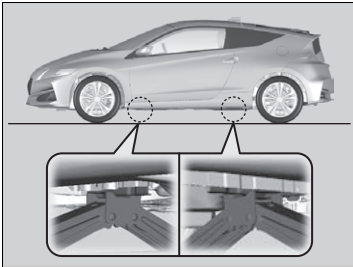
⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

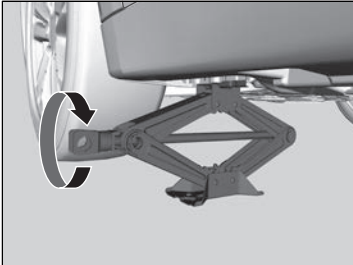
Breathing this colorless, odorless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

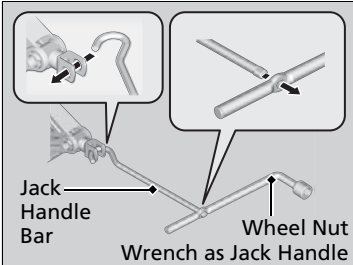
How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tire to be changed.



2. Turn the end bracket (as shown in the image) clockwise until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tire is off the ground.

How to Set Up the Jack

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly, and never get under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or their shape may not match.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely.

- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

☞ Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle to jump start it.

☞ **Jump Starting** P. 366

Starter condition

Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly.

The 12-volt battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.

Checklist

Check for a message on the multi-information display.

- If the **TO START, HOLD REMOTE NEAR START BUTTON** message appears
 - ☞ **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak** P. 364
- ▶ Make sure the smart entry remote is in its operating range.
 - ☞ **ENGINE START/STOP Button** P. 126

Check the brightness of the interior lights.

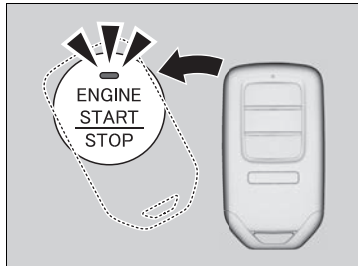
Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness.

- If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all
 - ☞ **Checking the 12-Volt Battery** P. 340
- If the interior lights come on normally
 - ☞ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 382

Starter condition	Checklist
<p>The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start. There may be a problem with the fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.</p>	<p>Review the engine start procedure. Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ➤ Starting the Engine P. 251</p> <hr/> <p>Check the immobilizer system indicator. When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. ➤ Immobilizer System P. 122</p> <hr/> <p>Check the fuel level. There should be enough fuel in the tank. ➤ Fuel Gauge P. 89</p> <hr/> <p>Check the fuse. Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➤ Inspecting and Changing Fuses P. 382</p> <hr/> <p>If the problem continues: ➤ Emergency Towing P. 383</p>

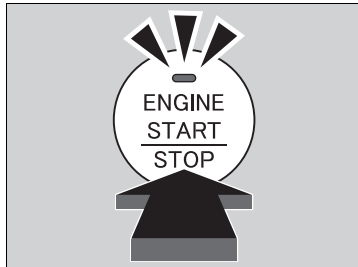
If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **TO START, HOLD REMOTE NEAR START BUTTON** message appears on the multi-information display, the indicator on the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start, start the engine as follows.



1. Touch the center of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the smart entry remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the smart entry remote should be facing you.

▶ The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal*¹ or clutch pedal*² and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.
▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to **ACCESSORY**.

*1: Continuously variable transmission models

*2: Manual transmission models

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the engine disables the power assist the engine provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place. With manual transmission models you can also downshift the transmission to utilize engine braking.

Continuously variable transmission for U.S. models

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.

To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, change the gear position to **P** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Continuously variable transmission for Canadian models

Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

Manual transmission models

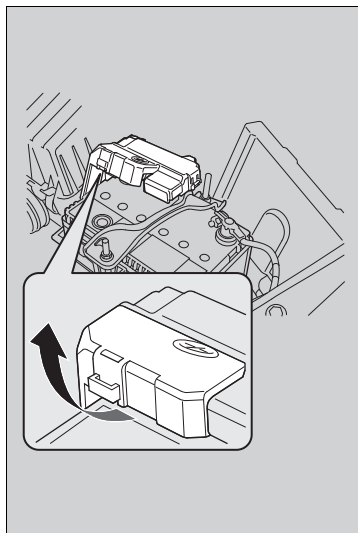
The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

Emergency Engine Stop

Do not press the button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be switched off.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the hood.



1. Open the fuse box cover on your vehicle's 12-volt battery positive ⊕ terminal.

Jump Starting

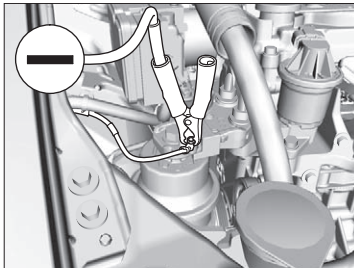
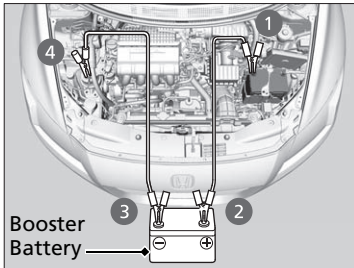
⚠ WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.



2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's 12-volt battery \oplus terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery \oplus terminal.
 - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
 - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery \ominus terminal.
5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the grounding strap as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

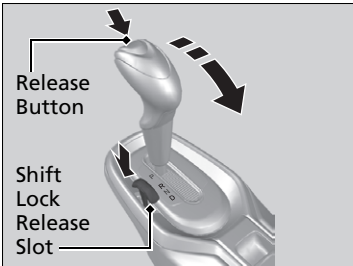
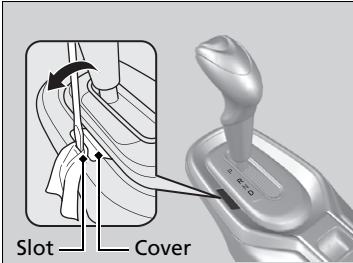
Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Continuously variable transmission models

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.
2. Remove the built-in key from the smart entry remote.
3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot as shown in the image, and remove the cover.
4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
5. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button and place the shift lever into **N**.
 - ▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The high temperature indicator comes on or the engine suddenly loses power.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
 - ▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the hood.
 - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the hood.

☞ How to Handle Overheating

WARNING

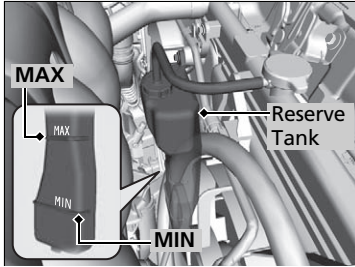
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the high temperature indicator on may damage the engine.

■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the high temperature indicator goes off.
 - ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
 - ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
 - ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the high temperature indicator.

If the high temperature indicator is off, resume driving. If it stays on, contact a dealer for repairs.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ What to do as soon as the indicator comes on

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minutes.
2. Open the hood and check the oil level.
 - ▶ Add oil as necessary.
 - **Oil Check** P. 310
3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.
 - ▶ The light goes off: Start driving again.
 - ▶ The light does not go off within 10 seconds: Stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

▶▶ If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the 12V Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the 12-volt battery is not being charged.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Turn off the climate control system, rear defogger, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

▶▶ If the 12V Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the 12-volt battery.

Manual transmission models

This indicator may also come on when the Auto Idle Stop function is activated for a while. Restart the engine.

▶▶ **Auto Idle Stop** P. 267

Continuously variable transmission models

This indicator may also come on when the IMA battery charge drops below a desired level. The engine starts to recharge the battery.

▶▶ **Auto Idle Stop** P. 264

The indicator goes off when the battery is being charged normally.

This indicator may blink after starting when the outside temperature is below -20°F (-30°C). It will stop blinking after the IMA battery warms up.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system, or the fuel fill cap is missing, or loose.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

■ Check/Tighten Fuel Cap Message

■ The message appears on when:

An evaporative system leak is detected. This may be caused by the fuel fill cap being loose or not being installed.

■ What to do when the message appears:

1. Stop the engine.
2. Check that the fuel fill cap is fully installed.
 - ▶ If not, loosen the cap, and then retighten it until it clicks at least once.
3. Drive for several days of normal driving.
 - ▶ The message should go off.

■ When the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

Malfunction indicator lamp comes on if the system continues to detect a leak of gasoline vapor. If this happens, check the fuel fill cap using the procedures described above.

⚠ If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 31 mph (50 km/h) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

■ Reasons for the indicator to blink

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator blinks

- Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on when there is a problem with EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.

If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

▶▶ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.

It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.

Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

▶▶ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on

P. 376

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on

U.S.



Canada



(Red)

■ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically

➤ Parking Brake P. 284

- If the Brake System Indicator (Red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.

➤ Preventing the vehicle from moving

Continuously variable transmission models

Move to shift lever to **P**.

Manual transmission models

Move to shift lever to **1** or **R**.

- If only the Brake System Indicator (Red) is turned off, avoid using the Parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

➤ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) and the Brake System Indicator (Amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If the IMA Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when there is a problem with the IMA system.

■ What to do when the indicator come on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

U.S. models

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tire pressure is significantly low, or the TPMS has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the TPMS, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tire pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tire pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the TPMS after the tire pressure is adjusted.

■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tire inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

▶▶ If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

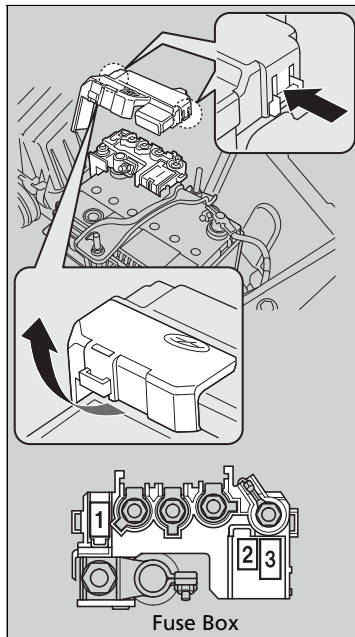
Driving on an extremely underinflated tire can cause it to overheat. An overheated tire can fail. Always inflate your tires to the prescribed level.

Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Type A)

Located near the ⊕ terminal on the 12-volt battery.



Fuse Box

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

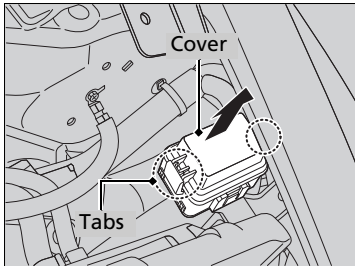
1. Pull on the tab to release the front of the cover.
2. Pull up the cover by pushing the two tabs as shown.
Replacement of engine compartment fuses should be done by a dealer.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Battery	100 A
2	EPS	70 A
3	Horn, Stop, Hazard	20 A

■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Type B)

Located in the back of the engine compartment on the left side. Push the tabs to open the box.



Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.

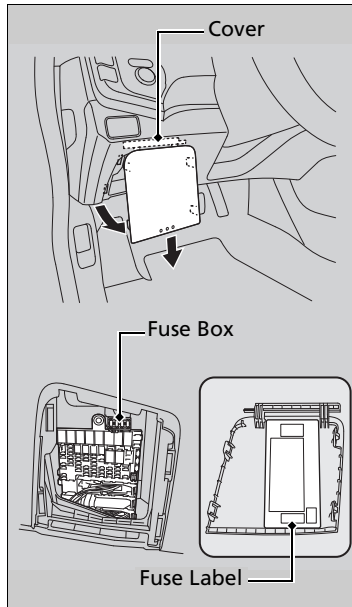
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover mark.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	HAZARD	10 A
2	STOP/HORN	10 A
3	BACK UP	30 A
4	–	–

■ Interior Fuse Box (Type A)

Located under the driver side dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the label on the back side of the cover.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

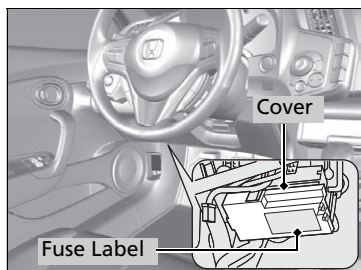
	Circuit Protected	Amps
a	TAIL GATE LOCK	10 A
b	–	–
c	BACK UP	10 A
d	STRD	7.5 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	DOOR LOCK	20 A
2	–	–
3	SMART	10 A
4	R SIDE DOOR UNLOCK	10 A
5	L SIDE DOOR UNLOCK	(10 A)
6	DR DOOR UNLOCK	(10 A)
7	–	–
8	DR PW	20 A
9	DAY LIGHT	(7.5 A)
10	AS PW	20 A
11	–	–
12	R SIDE DOOR LOCK	10 A
13	L SIDE DOOR LOCK	10 A
14	–	–
15	H/L HI R	10 A
16	–	–
17	DBW	15 A
18	MG CLUTCH	7.5 A
19	HEATED SEAT	(15 A)

	Circuit Protected	Amps
20	IMA2	15 A
21	IMA1	7.5 A
22	WASHER	15 A
23	RR WIPER	10 A
24	A/C	7.5 A
25	DAY LIGHT	(7.5 A)
26	FR WIPER	7.5 A
27	ABS/SA	7.5 A
28	SRS	10 A
29	H/L HI L	10 A
30	IG IMA	10 A
31	P/W	10 A
32	FUEL PUMP	15 A
33	SRS	7.5 A
34	METER	7.5 A
35	BACK LIGHT	10 A
36	FR ACC SOCKET	20 A
37	ACC	7.5 A
38	–	–
39	RR WIPER	7.5 A
40	–	–
41	–	–
42	–	–

■ Interior Fuse Box (Type B)

Located under the driver side dashboard.
Push the tabs to open the box.



Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.
Locate the fuse in question by the the fuse number and box cover number.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

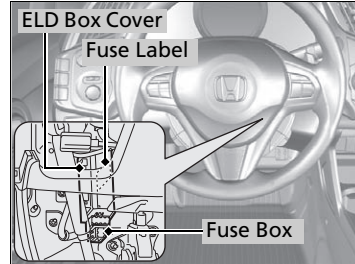
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	RR DEF	30 A
	IG MAIN	30 A
	FB MAIN2	50 A
	FB MAIN3	40 A
	FB MAIN1	30 A
2	–	40 A
	EPB L	30 A
	EPB R	30 A
	IG MAIN2	30 A
	–	40 A
	COND FAN	30 A
3	MAIN FAN	30 A
	WIPER	30 A
4	STARTER	30 A
5	BACK UP MAIN	15 A
6	FR FOG	(20 A)
7	IGP	15 A
8	SMALL	10 A
9	H/L LO MAIN	20 A* ¹
		30 A* ²
10	AUDIO AMP	(20 A)
11	HTR	30 A

*1: Models with halogen bulb low beam headlights
*2: Models with discharge headlights

	Circuit Protected	Amps
12	–	–
13	–	–
14	–	–
15	H/MIRROR	(10 A)

Interior Fuse Box (Type C)

Located under the driver side dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the label of the ELD box cover.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

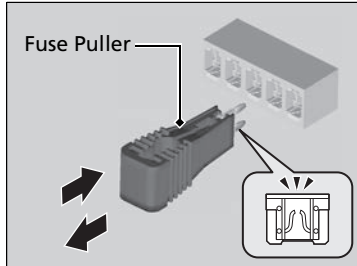
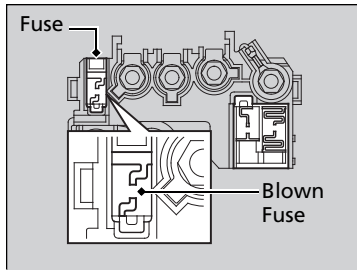
■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	H/L LO L	10 A ^{*1} 15 A ^{*2}
2	H/L LO R	10 A ^{*1} 15 A ^{*2}
3	VSA FSR	30 A
4	LAF	10 A
5	IG COIL	15 A
6	IGPS	7.5 A

*1: Models with halogen bulb low beam headlights

*2: Models with discharge headlights

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Check the fuses in the engine compartment.
 - If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.
3. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and vehicle interior.
 - If there is a burned out fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

► Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

Confirm the specified amperage using the charts on P. 378 to P. 381.

There is a fuse puller in the tool box.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tires and lift them off the ground. The rear tires remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

☒ Emergency Towing

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

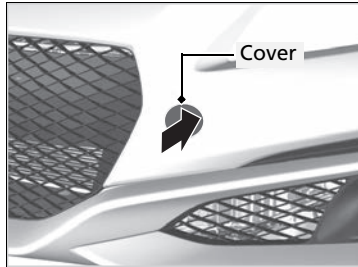
NOTICE

Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

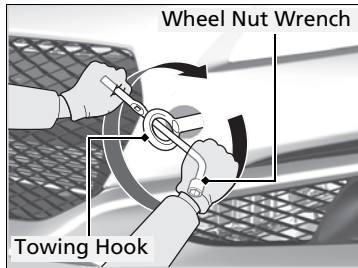
Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

■ Towing Hook

For very short distances, such as freeing the vehicle, you can use the detachable towing hook that mounts on the anchor in the front bumper.



1. Push the right edge of the cover with your finger, then remove it.
2. Take the towing hook and the wheel nut wrench out of the cargo area.



3. Screw the towing hook into the hole, and tighten it with the wheel nut wrench.

» Towing Hook

NOTICE

To avoid damage to your vehicle, use the towing hook for straight, flat ground towing only. Do not tow at an angle. This hook should not be used to tow the vehicle onto a flat bed. Do not use it as a tie down.

Make sure to use the properly-designed and attached towing equipment.

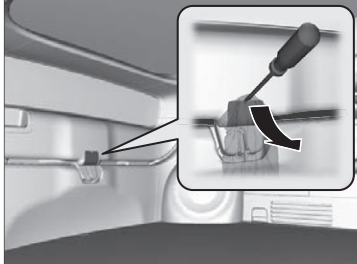
NOTICE

Do not slip the clutch for a long time to get unstuck. This may overheat and damage the transmission.

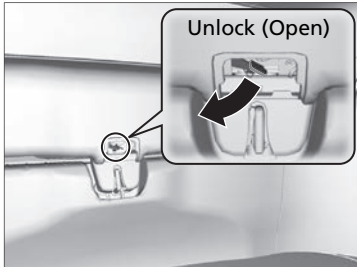
When You Cannot Open the Hatch

What to Do When Unable to Open the Hatch

If you cannot open the hatch, use the following procedure.



1. Remove the cover on the back of the hatch by prying it off with a small flat-tip screwdriver.
 - ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Push the release lever until the hatch unlocks. Push the hatch up to open.

What to Do When Unable to Open the Hatch

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have your vehicle checked.

When you open the hatch from inside, make sure there is enough space around the hatch, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications	388
Identification Numbers	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number	390
Devices that Emit Radio Waves	391
Reporting Safety Defects	392
Emissions Testing	
Testing of Readiness Codes	393
Warranty Coverages	395
Authorized Manuals	397
Customer Service Information	398

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	CR-Z
No. of Passengers:	
Front	2
Rear	-
Total	2
Weights:	
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	U.S.: 3,263 lbs (1,480 kg) Canada: 1,480 kg
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Front)	U.S.: 1,819 lbs (825 kg) Canada: 825 kg
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Rear)	U.S.: 1,455 lbs (660 kg) Canada: 660 kg
Air Conditioning:	
Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	15.8 – 17.6 oz (450 – 500 g)
Lubricant Type	SP-10

■ Engine Specifications

Displacement	91 cu-in (1,497 cm ³)
Spark Plugs	NGK DIFR6D13
	DENSO DK20PR-D13

■ Fuel

Type	Unleaded gasoline, Pump octane number of 87 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	10.6 US gal (40 L)

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	U.S.: 2.6 US qt (2.5 L) Canada: 5.12 US qt (4.85 L)
---------------	--

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	35W (D4S) ^{*1} 55W (H11) ^{*2}
Headlights (High Beam)	60W (HB3)
Fog Lights*	35W (H8)
Front Turn Signal/Parking*/Side Marker Lights	28W/8W
Parking*/Daytime Running* Light	LED
Rear Side Marker Lights	3CP
Brake/Taillights	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Back-Up Lights	16W
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
High-Mount Brake Lights	LED
License Plate Light	5W
Cargo Area Light	5W
Interior Lights	
Front	8W
Rear	3.4W
Vanity Mirror Lights*	2W
Glove Box Light	1.4W
Courtesy Lights	2CP (3.8W)

*1: Vehicle with discharge headlights

*2: Vehicle with halogen bulb low beam headlights

■ Brake/Clutch * Fluid

Specified	Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3
-----------	------------------------------------

■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid	
Capacity	Change	3.0 US qt (2.8 L)

■ Manual Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF)	
Capacity	Change	1.5 US qt (1.4 L)

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	-Genuine Honda Motor Oil 0W-20	
	-API Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil	
Capacity	Change	3.6 US qt (3.4 L)
	Change including filter	3.8 US qt (3.6 L)

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type2	
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water	
Capacity	1.17 US gal (4.42 L)* ¹	
	1.15 US gal (4.35 L)* ²	
	(change including the remaining 0.116 US gal (0.44 L) in the reserve tank)	

*1: Manual transmission models

*2: Continuously variable transmission models

■ Tire

Regular	Size	P195/55R16 86V	
		205/45R17 84W* ¹	
	Pressure psi (kPa [kgf/cm ²])	Front	30 (210 [2.1])
		Rear	32 (220 [2.2])* ¹
Wheel Size	Regular	16 x 6J	
		17 x 6 1/2J* ¹	

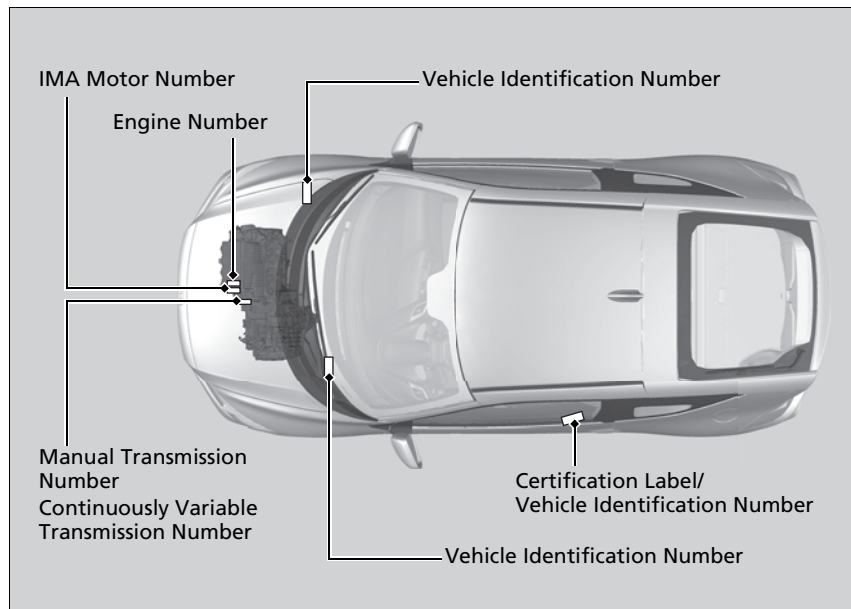
*1: Optional on Canadian models

* Not available on all models

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle.

The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.



Devices that Emit Radio Waves

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Audio System

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Bluetooth® Audio

Immobilizer System

Remote Transmitter

Keyless Access System

Each of the above complies with the appropriate requirements or the required standards of FCC (Federal Communications Commission) and Industry Canada Standard, described below:

As required by the FCC:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

In the U.S.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

In Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Honda Canada Inc. and you may also inform Transport Canada.

If Transport Canada receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may lead to a recall and remedy campaign. However, Transport Canada cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Honda Canada Inc.

To contact Transport Canada's Defect Investigations and Recalls Division, you may call 1-800-333-0510. For more information on reporting safety defects or about motor vehicle safety, go to <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety>.

Testing of Readiness Codes

Your vehicle has “Readiness Codes,” as part of the onboard self diagnostic system. Some States use these codes as a test to see if your vehicle's emissions components are working properly.

The codes may not be read properly if testing is performed just after the battery has gone dead or been disconnected.

To check if they are set, set the power mode to ON, without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for several seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks five times, the readiness codes are not set.

If you are required to have your vehicle tested before the readiness codes are ready, prepare the vehicle for retesting by doing the following:

1. Fill the gas tank to approximately 3/4 full.
2. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 6 hours or more.
3. Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40 °F and 95 °F (4 °C and 35 °C).
4. Start the engine without touching the accelerator pedal, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
5. Keep the vehicle in **P** (continuously variable transmission) or **N** (manual transmission). Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there for about 3 minutes.
6. Let the engine idle with your foot off the accelerator for 20 seconds.

Testing of Readiness Codes

The readiness codes are erased when the 12-volt battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If a testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you may be requested to return at a later date to complete the test.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see a dealer.

7. Select a nearby, lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in **D** (continuously variable transmission) or 6th (manual transmission). Do not use cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).
8. Drive in city/suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.
9. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 30 minutes.

■ U.S. Owners

Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

New Vehicle Limited Warranty – covers your new vehicle, except for the emissions control systems and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty – these two warranties cover your vehicle's emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

Seat Belt Limited Warranty – a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Rust Perforation Limited Warranty – all exterior body panels are covered for rust-through from the inside for the specified time period with no mileage limit.

Accessory Limited Warranty – Honda accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Replacement Parts Limited Warranty – covers all Honda replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

Replacement Battery Limited Warranty – provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from a dealer.

Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty – provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the Honda warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

■ **Canadian Owners**

Please refer to the warranty manual that came with your vehicle.

■ Service Express

For electronic copies of service publications, you can purchase a subscription to Service Express. Visit techinfo.honda.com for pricing and options.

■ For Canadian Owners:

Please contact a dealer to order any manuals that you may require.

■ U.S. Owners

Manuals can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order a manual by phone at (800) 782-4356 (credit card orders only), or online at www.helminc.com.

Honda dealership personnel are trained professionals.

They should be able to answer all your questions. If you encounter a problem that your dealership does not solve to your satisfaction, please discuss it with the dealership's service manager or general manager. If you are dissatisfied with the decision made by the dealership's management, contact Honda Customer Services.

U.S. Owners:

American Honda Motor Co., Inc.
Honda Automobile Customer Services
Mail Stop 500-2N-7A
1919 Torrance Blvd.
Torrance, CA 90501-2746
Tel: (800) 999-1009

Canadian Owners:

Honda Canada Inc.
Customer Relations
180 Honda Boulevard
Markham, ON
L6C 0H9
Tel: 1-888-9-HONDA-9
Fax: 1-877-939-0909
E-mail: Honda_cr@ch.honda.com

In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands:

Bella International
P.O. Box 190816
San Juan, PR 00919-0816
Tel: (787) 620-7546

Customer Service Information

When you call or write, please give us the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number
 - **Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number** P. 390
- Date of purchase
- Odometer reading of your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you

Numbers

12 Volt Battery Charging System

Indicator	72
3-Mode Drive System	270
ECON Mode Indicator	81
NORMAL Mode Indicator	81
SPORT Mode Indicator	81
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode	258

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)	288
Accessories and Modifications	297
Accessory Power Socket	149
Active Head Restraints	145
Additives	
Coolant	314
Engine Oil	309
Washer	319
Additives, Engine Oil	309
Adjusting	
Clock	108
Headlights	320
Mirrors	139
Seats	141
Steering Wheel	138
Adjusting the Sound	173
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System)	155
Changing the Mode	155

Defrosting the Windshield and Windows	156
Dust and Pollen Filter	343
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode	155
Sensors	157
Using Automatic Climate Control	155
Air Pressure	331
Airbags	43
Advanced Airbags	49
After a Collision	57
Airbag Care	57
Event Data Recorders	0
Front Airbags (SRS)	46
Indicator	54, 74, 78
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator	55
Sensors	49
Side Airbag Cutoff System	52
Side Airbag Off Indicator	52
Side Airbags	50
Side Curtain Airbags	53
AM/FM Radio	175
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	288
Indicator	74
ASST Indicator	90
Audio Remote Controls	164
Audio System	160
Adjusting the Sound	173
Error Messages	195
General Information	199
HDMI™ Port	162
iPhone	201

iPod	181
MP3/WMA/AAC	178, 186
Reactivating	163
Recommended CDs	199
Recommended Devices	201
Security Code	163
Theft Protection	163
USB Flash Drives	201
USB Ports	161
Audio/Information Screen	168
Authorized Manuals	397
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking	118
Customize	98
Auto Idle Stop	
Continuously Variable Transmission	264
Manual Transmission	267
Auto Idle Stop Indicator	80
Automatic Lighting	131
Average Fuel Economy	96
Average Fuel Economy Records	96
Average Speed	93

B

Back-Up Light	325
Battery	340
Charging System Indicator	72, 373
Jump Starting	366
Maintenance (Checking the 12 Volt Battery)	340

Maintenance (Replacing the Button Battery).....	342
Battery Charge in Progress (CHRG)	90
Belts (Seat)	36
Beverage Holders	148
Bluetooth® Audio	189
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®	213
Booster Seats (For Children)	65
Brake System	284
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	288
Brake Assist System.....	289
Brake System Indicator.....	375
Fluid.....	318
Foot Brake.....	287
Indicator.....	375
Parking Brake.....	284
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel)	136
Bulb Replacement	320
Back-Up Light, Rear Turn Signal Lights and Rear Side Marker Lights.....	325
Brake/Taillights.....	326
Bulb Specifications.....	388
Daytime Running Light.....	324
Fog Lights.....	322
Front Turn Signal/Parking/Side Marker Lights.....	324
Headlights.....	320
High-Mount Brake Light.....	327
Rear License Plate Lights.....	327
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Light.....	324
C	
Carbon Monoxide Gas	66
Cargo Cover	152
Carrying Cargo	245, 247
CD Player	178
Certification Label	390
Changing Bulbs	320
Charging System Indicator	72, 373
Child Safety	58
Child Seat	58
Booster Seats.....	65
Child Seat for Infants.....	60
Child Seat for Small Children.....	61
Installing a Child Seat.....	62
Larger Children.....	64
Selecting a Child Seat.....	61
Using a Tether.....	63
CHRG Indicator	90
Cleaning the Exterior	346
Cleaning the Interior	344
Climate Control System	155
Changing the Mode.....	155
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows.....	156
Dust and Pollen Filter.....	343
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode.....	155
Sensors.....	157
Using Automatic Climate Control.....	155
Continuously Variable Transmission	255
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode.....	258, 259
Auto Idle Stop.....	264
Creeping.....	255
Fluid.....	316
Kickdown.....	255
L Mode.....	260
Operating the Shift Lever.....	257
Shift Lever Does Not Move.....	369
Shifting.....	256
Controls	107
Coolant (Engine)	314
Adding to the Radiator.....	315
Adding to the Reserve Tank.....	314
High Temperature Indicator.....	77
Low Temperature Indicator.....	77
Overheating.....	370
Creep Aid System	253
Creeping	255
Cruise Control	273
Indicator.....	80
Cup Holders	148
Customer Service Information	398
Customized Features	98, 202
D	
Daytime Running Lights	133
Dead Battery	366
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows	156
Devices that Emit Radio Waves	391
Dimming	
Headlights.....	129

Rearview Mirror	139, 140
Dipstick (Engine Oil)	310
Directional Signals (Turn Signal).....	129
Display Setup.....	174
Door Mirrors.....	140
Doors	109
Auto Door Locking.....	118
Auto Door Unlocking	118
Door Open Indicator	74
Door/Hatch Open Indicator	35, 74
Keys.....	109
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside	116
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside	112
Lockout Prevention System	115
DOT Tire Quality Grading	334
Driving	243
3-Mode Drive System.....	270
Braking	284
Continuously Variable Transmission	255
Cruise Control	273
Manual Transmission	261
Plus Sport System.....	271
Shifting Gear (Continuously Variable Transmission)	256
Shifting Gear (Manual Transmission)	261
Starting the Engine	251
Dust and Pollen Filter	343

E

Eco Assist System	10
Eco Score	11, 94
Ecological Drive Display	94
ECON Mode	81, 270
Elapsed Time	93
Electric Motor Assist Indicator (ASST)	90
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	76, 375
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	276
Emergency	383
Emissions Testing (Readiness Codes)	393
Engine	390
Coolant	314
Jump Starting	366
Oil	309
Starting	251
Engine Coolant	314
Adding to the Radiator	315
Adding to the Reserve Tank.....	314
High Temperature Indicator	77
Low Temperature Indicator.....	77
Overheating	370
Engine Oil	309
Adding	311
Checking.....	310
Displaying Oil Life	303
Low Oil Pressure Indicator.....	71, 372
Recommended Engine Oil.....	309
Engine Oil Life	96

EPS (Electric Power Steering)

System	76, 375
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide)..	66
Exterior Care (Cleaning).....	346
Exterior Mirrors	140

F

Features	159
Filters	343
Dust and Pollen.....	343
Oil.....	312
Floor Mats	345
Fluids	
Brake	318
Clutch	318
Continuously Variable Transmission.....	316
Engine Coolant	314
Manual Transmission.....	317
Windshield Washer	319
Foot Brake	287
Front Airbags (SRS)	46
Front Wiper/Washer	134
Fuel	24, 293
Economy	296
Gauge.....	89
Instant Fuel Economy Gauge	89
Low Fuel Indicator.....	73
Range	93
Recommendation	293
Refueling.....	293

Fuel Economy.....	296
Fuel Fill Cap.....	24, 295
Message.....	374
Fuel Fill Door.....	24, 294
Fuses.....	378
Inspecting and Changing.....	382
Locations.....	378

G

Gasoline (Fuel)	
Economy.....	296
Gauge.....	89
Information.....	293
Instant Fuel Economy.....	89
Low Fuel Indicator.....	73
Refueling.....	293
Gauges.....	89
Gear Shift Lever Positions	
Continuously Variable Transmission.....	256
Glass (care).....	346
Glove Box.....	147

H

Halogen Bulbs.....	320
Handling the Unexpected.....	349
HandsFreeLink® (HFL).....	213
Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History.....	227
HFL Buttons.....	213

HFL Menus.....	215
HFL Status Display.....	214
Limitations for Manual Operation.....	214
Mail Account.....	235
Making a Call.....	230
Options During a Call.....	233
Phone Setup.....	220
Receiving a Call.....	233
Ring Tone.....	226
Speed Dial.....	228
Text Message.....	225, 234, 236
Hatch	119
Door/Hatch Open Indicator.....	35, 74
Unable to Open.....	385
Hazard Warning Button	4
HDMI™ Port	162
Head Restraints	143
Headlights	129
Aiming.....	320
Automatic Operation.....	131
Dimming.....	129
Operating.....	129
Heaters (Seat)	154
HFL (HandsFreeLink®)	213
High Temperature Indicator	77
High-Beam Indicator	78
Hill Start Assist System	253
Honda IMA System	12
HondaLink®	240

I

Identification Numbers	390
Engine and Transmission.....	390
Vehicle Identification.....	390
Ignition Switch Reminder	128
Illumination Control	136
Knob.....	136
IMA Battery Charge Level Indicator	90
IMA System Indicator	77
Immobilizer System	122
Indicator.....	80
Indicators	70
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode.....	79
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	74
Auto Idle Stop.....	80
Charging System.....	72, 373
CRUISE CONTROL.....	80, 274
CRUISE MAIN.....	80
Door Open.....	35, 74
ECON Mode.....	81
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System.....	76, 375
Fog Light.....	79
High Temperature.....	77
High-Beam.....	78
IMA System.....	77
Immobilizer System.....	80
Lights On.....	79
Low Fuel.....	73
Low Oil Pressure.....	71, 372
Low Temperature.....	77

Low Tire Pressure/TPMS	76, 280	Jump Starting	366	Locking and Unlocking	109
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	72, 374			Auto Door Locking/Unlocking.....	118
NORMAL Mode	81	K		From Inside	116
Parking Brake and Brake		Key Number Tag	110	From Outside	112
System	70, 71, 375	Keyless Lockout Prevention	115	Keys.....	109
Plus Sport System.....	82	Keyless Remote Reminder	128	Using a Key.....	115
Seat Belt Reminder.....	37, 73	Keys	109	Lockout Prevention System	115
Security System Alarm.....	80	Lockout Prevention	115	Low Battery Charge (12 volt)	373
Shift Down	81	Master Keys.....	109	Low Fuel Indicator	73
Shift Lever Position.....	79	Number Tag	110	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	71, 372
Shift Up	81	Remote Transmitter	112	Low Temperature Indicator	77
Side Airbag Off.....	56, 78	Types and Functions	109	Lubricant Specifications Chart	388, 389
SPORT Mode.....	81	Kickdown	255	Luggage (Maximum Load Limit)	247
Supplemental Restraint System	54, 74				
System Message	78	L		M	
Transmission	72	L Mode	260	M (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode)	
Turn Signal	79	LaneWatch™	278	Indicator.....	79
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) OFF	75, 277	Language (HFL)	214	Maintenance	299
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®)		Lights	129, 320	Battery	340
System	75, 276	Automatic	131	Brake Fluid	318
Information	387	Bulb Replacement.....	320	Cleaning	344
Instant Fuel Economy Gauge	89	Daytime Running Lights.....	133	Climate Control.....	343
Instrument Panel	69	Fog Light Indicator.....	79	Clutch Fluid.....	318
Brightness Control	136	High-Beam Indicator	78	Coolant.....	314
Interior Lights	146	Interior	146	Maintenance Minder™.....	303
Interior Rearview Mirror	139	Light Switches	129	Oil.....	309
Internet Radio	184	Lights On Indicator	79	Precautions	300
		Turn Signals.....	129	Radiator	315
J		Load Limits	247	Remote Transmitter.....	342
Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench)	361			Replacing Light Bulbs	320

Safety.....	301
Service Items.....	305
Tires	331
Transmission Fluid.....	316, 317
Under the Hood.....	307
Maintenance Minder™	303
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	72, 374
Manual Transmission	
Auto Idle Stop	267
Checking the Clutch Fluid.....	318
Fluid (MTF).....	317
Operating the Shift Lever.....	261
Reverse Lockout.....	263
Shift UP/DOWN indicators.....	262
Shifting.....	261
Maximum Load Limit	247
Meters, Gauges	89
Mirrors	139
Adjusting.....	139
Door.....	140
Exterior.....	140
Interior Rearview.....	139
Modifications and Accessories	297
MP3	178, 186
Multi-Information Display	91
Multi-View Rear Camera	291
N	
NORMAL Mode	81, 270
Numbers (Identification)	390

O

Odometer	92
Oil (Engine)	309
Adding.....	311
Checking.....	310
Displaying Oil Life.....	303
Low Oil Pressure Indicator	71, 372
Recommended Engine Oil	309
Viscosity	309
Opening/Closing	
Hood.....	308
Power Windows.....	124
Outside Temperature	93
Overheating	370

P

Pandora®	185
Panic Mode	123
Parking	290
Parking Brake	284
Parking Brake and Brake System	
Indicator.....	70, 71, 375
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator.....	55
Plus Sport System	82, 271
Plus Sport System Indicator	82
Power Door Mirror.....	140
Power Flow Monitor	97
Power Windows	124
Precautions While Driving	254
Rain	254

Pregnant Women	41
-----------------------------	----

R

Radiator	315
Radio (AM/FM)	175
Radio Data System (RDS)	177
Range	93
RDS (Radio Data System)	177
Readiness Code (Emissions Testing)	393
Rear Cargo Console	150
Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror	
Button.....	137
Rear Side Marker Light	325
Rear Turn Signal Light	325
Rearview Mirror	139
Refueling	293
Fuel Gauge	89
Gasoline	293, 388
Low Fuel Indicator.....	73
Regulations	282, 333, 391
Remote Transmitter	112
Replacement	
Battery.....	341
Bulbs	320
Button Battery, Remote Transmitter	342
Fuses	378
Tires.....	337
Wiper Blade Rubber.....	328, 330
Reporting Safety Defects	392
Resetting a Trip Meter	92

S

Safe Driving	31	Shift Lever Position Indicator.....	257	Low Temperature Indicator.....	77
Safety Check.....	35	Shifting		Temperature Sensor.....	157
Safety Labels.....	67	Continuously Variable Transmission	256	Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire.....	351
Safety Message.....	1	Manual Transmission	261	Time (Setting).....	108
Seat.....	141	Side Airbags.....	50	Tire Pressure Monitoring System	
Adjusting.....	141	Cutoff System	52	(TPMS).....	280
Seat Heaters	154	Off Indicator.....	52	Indicator.....	76, 377
Seat Belts.....	36	Side Curtain Airbags.....	53	Tires.....	331
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners.....	38	Siri® Eyes Free.....	194	Air Pressure.....	332, 389
Checking.....	42	Snow Tires.....	339	Checking and Maintaining	331
Fastening.....	39	Spark Plugs.....	388	Inspection.....	331
Installing a Child Seat.....	62	Specifications.....	388	Labeling.....	332
Pregnant Women.....	41	Specified Fuel.....	293, 388	Regulations.....	334
Reminder.....	37	Speedometer	89	Rotation.....	338
Warning Indicator.....	37, 73	SPORT Mode.....	81, 270	Tire Chains.....	339
Seat Heaters.....	154	SRS Airbags (Airbags).....	43	Wear Indicators.....	336
Security System		Starting the Engine.....	251	Winter.....	339
Immobilizer System Indicator.....	80	Does Not Start.....	362	Tools.....	350
Security System Alarm Indicator	80	Jump Starting.....	366	Towing a Trailer.....	250
SEL/RESET Button.....	98	Steering Wheel.....	138	Towing Hook.....	384
Selecting a Child Seat.....	61	Adjusting.....	138	Towing Your Vehicle.....	250
Setting the Clock.....	108	Stopping.....	290	Emergency.....	383
Shift Lever.....	23	Supplemental Restraint System (SRS).....	46	TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring	
Continuously Variable Transmission	256	Switches (Around the Steering Wheel) ...	4, 5	System).....	280
Operation.....	23	System Message Indicator.....	78	Indicator.....	76, 377
Operation (Continuously Variable				Transmission	
Transmission).....	257	T		Continuously Variable	256
Operation (Manual Transmission).....	261	Tachometer.....	89	Fluid.....	316, 317
Releasing.....	369	Temperature		Manual.....	261
Won't Move.....	369	High Temperature Indicator.....	77	Number.....	390
				Shift Lever Position Indicator.....	257

Trip Meter	92
Troubleshooting	349
Blown Fuse	378
Brake Pedal Vibrates	27
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door	28
Emergency Towing	383
Engine Does Not Start	362
Noise When Braking	29
Overheating	370
Regular Gasoline	293, 388
Shift Lever Won't Move	369
Unable to Open the Hatch	385
Warning Indicators	70
Turn Signals	129
Indicators (Instrument Panel)	79

U

Unlocking the Doors	112
USB Adapter Cable	160
USB Flash Drives	201
USB Ports	161

V

Vanity Mirrors	7
Vehicle Identification Number	390
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®)	276
Off Button	277
Off Indicator	75, 277
System	276

System Indicator	75
Ventilation	155
Viscosity (Oil)	309, 389

W

Wallpaper	171
Warning and Information Messages	83
Warning Indicator On/Blinking	372
Warning Labels	67
Warranties (Warranty Manual provided separately)	395
Watts	388
Wear Indicators (Tire)	336
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle)	361
Window Washers	134
Adding/Refilling Fluid	319
Switch	134
Windows (Opening and Closing)	124
Windshield	134
Cleaning	347
Defrosting/Defogging	156
Washer Fluid	319
Wiper Blades	328, 330
Wipers and Washers	134
Winter Tires	339
Snow Tires	339
Tire Chains	339
Wipers and Washers	134
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades	328, 330

WMA	178, 186
------------------	----------

